st

PREP

FIRST TERM

AL ADWAA

Gem

2024

NEW HELIUM

ALADWAA
Gem

New Hello!

الصف الأول الإعدادى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

Prepared by
Said Darahem
&
A Group of Experts in Teaching English

7

راجع إجاباتك

نزل إجابات الكتاب بصيغة PDF

هنا تجد كودك الشخصى

ذاكر صح

NAHDET MISR
PUBLISHING HOUSE

www.aladwaa.com Follow Us

ذاكر صح

● كل منا يفضل طريقة وأسلوبًا للتعلم، ولكى تكتشف أفضل طريقة للتعلم تناسبك أجب عن الأسئلة التالية، واختر الإجابة المناسبة لك، ثم رتب العدد الإجمالى لإجاباتك من بين كل من: (أ) و (ب) و (جـ):

ضع علامةً أمام (أ) إذا كانت العبارة صحيحة دائمًا بالنسبة لك، وأمام (ب) إذا كانت العبارة صحيحة أحيانًا، وأمام (جـ) إذا كانت العبارة ليست صحيحة أبدًا:

١ لا أفضل الجلوس والاستماع إلى الآخرين فترات طويلة.

٢ أجيد فهم التعليمات والتفسيرات الشفهية.

٣ أصور الكلمات فى عقلى حتى أستطيع تهجيها.

٤ أفضل تكرار سماع الكلمات لمساعدتى على التهجى.

٥ أحب أن يختارنى معلمى لقراءة الدرس.

٦ أستمتع بالمشاركة فى المناقشات كمستمع ومتحدث.

٧ أجد صعوبة فى البقاء دون حركة.

٨ أجيد الربط بين المعلومات التى يتضمنها الدرس وفهمها.

٩ أحرك يدى كثيرًا أثناء الحديث مع الآخرين.

١٠ أستطيع ربط معلومات مختلفة ببعضها، والخروج بنتائج مبتكرة.

١١ أمتلك القدرة على تخيل ما أقرأ.

١٢ أتعلم بشكل أفضل من خلال الأنشطة العملية.

١٣ أحب الاستماع إلى الموسيقى أثناء المذاكرة.

١٤ أفضل أن أقرأ المعلومات بصوت عالٍ لأتمكن من فهمها.

١٥ لا أستطيع التركيز لفترة طويلة عند الاستماع لشخص يتحدث.

	١	٢	٣	٤	٥	٦	٧	٨	٩	١٠	١١	١٢	١٣	١٤	١٥
أ															
ب															
جـ															

اعرف نمط تعلمك

حدد درجاتك

- إذا كانت معظم إجاباتك (أ) بالنسبة للأسئلة أرقام: ٣، ٥، ١٠، ١١، ١٥ فأنت متعلم بصرى.
- إذا كانت معظم إجاباتك (ب) بالنسبة للأسئلة أرقام: ٢، ٤، ٦، ٨، ١٤ فأنت متعلم سمعى.
- إذا كانت معظم إجاباتك (جـ) بالنسبة للأسئلة أرقام: ١، ٧، ٩، ١٢، ١٣ فأنت متعلم حركى.

بصرى

ننصحك عند المذاكرة بأن تتعامل مع شىء معروض أو مكتوب لاستيعاب المعلومات، مثل: الرسوم البيانية، والخرائط الذهنية، ومقاطع الفيديو، والبطاقات التعليمية، وأن تحول المادة المكتوبة إلى أشكال ملونة، وصور تعبر عن المادة التى تذاكرها.

سمعى

ننصحك عند المذاكرة بأن تقرأ المعلومات بصوت عالٍ؛ فهذا سيساعدك على فهمها، وكذلك المذاكرة فى مجموعات عن طريق المناقشة وتبادل المعلومات والعصف الذهنى.

حركى

ننصحك عند المذاكرة بأن ترسم ما تسمعه أو تحاول تخيله، وأن تتعلم من خلال الأنشطة التى تتطلب الحركة والتحدث مع الآخرين من خلال تمثيل الدرس على شكل مسرحية مثلًا.

دليلك للمحتوى الرقمى

١ افتح الـ QR Reader

٢ ضع الهاتف على صورة الـ QR

٣ عند ظهور الرابط قُم بالضغط عليه

من خلال الرابط يمكنك أن تستفيد من:

1	Study	شاهد فيديو شرح الدرس
2	Practice	يمكنك أن تحل تدريبات أكثر على الدرس
3	Test Yourself	حل اختبارات أكثر على الدرس
4	Check your Answers	راجع إجابات كتاب الشرح

تصنيف بلوم

تم الاعتماد فى إعداد التدريبات والأنشطة داخل الكتاب على تصنيف بلوم

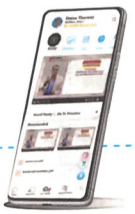
نواتج التعلم والمستويات المعرفية:

تمثل نواتج التعلم ما ينبغى أن يعرفه الطالب ويكون قادرًا على أدائه بعد دراسته لمقرر دراسى معين، فيما تشمل الأهداف المعرفية جميع النشاطات الذهنية أو العقلية، ويبدأ تصنيف نواتج التعلم فى المجال المعرفى من العمليات العقلية البسيطة ويمتد إلى العمليات الأكثر تعقيدًا (تصنيف بلوم)، ويوضح الشكل التالى هذه العمليات:

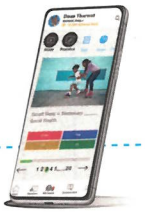
ستجد تلك الأيقونات بجانب كل سؤال فى تدريبات الأضواء؛ لمعرفة تصنيف السؤال وفقًا لهرم بلوم المعرفى.

Remembering | Understanding | Applying | Analysing | Evaluating | Creating

رحلتك مع الأضواء



فيديوهات تفاعلية
على كل درس



تدريبات تفاعلية
على كل درس

اختبار تفاعلي
على كل درس

اعرف مستواك من
تقارير متابعة الأداء

1 Study

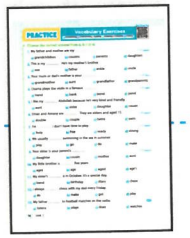
2 Practice

3 Test Yourself

4 Assess your progress

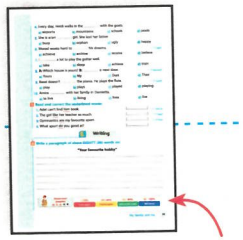
شرح مُبسط ووافٍ

تدريبات متنوعة
ومتدرجة المستوى



اختبارات مطابقة لأحدث
المواصفات الامتحانية

حدد مستواك فى
نهاية كل اختبار



#معاك_الكتاب_معاك_الـApp

Contents

Module 1 Family and friends

Unit 1
My family and me 7
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 1 49

Unit 2
It's my favourite subject 52
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 2 92
Monthly Models on units 1&2 95

Unit 3
Different people 100
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 3 137

Review
Review A 140

Module 2 The world around us

Unit 4
We're using technology! 143
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 4 180
Monthly Models on Units 3&4 183

Unit 5
Holidays 188
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 5 228

Unit 6
Let's eat! 231
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 6 275

Review
Review B 278
End of Term Practice 281

End of the Book
Listening Texts 285
Challenging Questions Answers 286

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الأول الإعدادى للعام الدراسى 2024-2023
الفصل الدراسى الأول

Month	New Hello! English for preparatory schools Year Three (SB + WB)		
September	Unit 1	December	Unit 5 (cont.) + 6 + Review B
October	Unit 1 (cont.) + 2 + 3	January (2024)	General Revision
November	Review A + 4 + 5		

Unit 1

My family and me

Objectives of the unit

Reading	An interview with twin brothers; Heidi; a text about a gymnast
Writing	A paragraph on hobbies; a description of a person in your family
Listening	An interview with twin brothers
Speaking	Talking about your family; asking questions
Language	Pronouns; present simple
Life Skills	Self-management
Values	Love of family
Issues	Awareness of rights and duties; loyalty and belonging

Tapescripts

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 2 - 5 | WB pages 72 & 73

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

Family members أفراد الأسرة			
aunt (n)	عمة/خالة – زوجة العم/الخال	great-grandfather (n)	الجد الأكبر (جد الأب/الأم)
daughter (n)	ابنة	great-grandmother (n)	الجدة الكبرى (جدة الأب/الأم)
grandfather (n)	جد	son (n)	ابن
grandmother (n)	جدة	uncle (n)	عم/خال - زوج العمة/الخالة
Both ذكور وإناث			
cousin (n)	ابن/ابنة (العم/العمة/الخال/الخالة)	great-grandparents (n)	أجداد الأجداد
grandchildren (n)	أحفاد	parents (n)	الوالدان

(be) aged (adj)	بالغ من العمر	interview (n)	مقابلة/حوار
band (n)	فرقة موسيقية	twin (n)	توءم
diary (n)	مفكرة/يوميات	family tree (n)	شجرة العائلة

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

arrive (d) (v)	يصل	football player (n)	لاعب كرة قدم
birthday (n)	عيد ميلاد	musical instrument (n)	آلة موسيقية
busy (adj)	مشغول/مزدحم	sports (n)	ألعاب رياضية
children's hospital (n)	مستشفى أطفال	together (adv)	معًا/ سويًا
favourite hobby	هواية مفضلة	use (d) (v)	يستخدم

Check Point

Choose and complete: hospital – uncle – hobby – aunt

1. My ..... is called Wafaa.
2. Reading is my favourite ..... .
3. My cousin is in the ..... because he's ill.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

play	music	يعزف موسيقى	make	noise	يصنع ضوضاء
	chess	يلعب شطرنج	do	hobbies	يمارس هوايات
	the drums	يعزف على الطبل		voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعى
go	swimming	يذهب للسباحة	listen to	music	يستمع إلى الموسيقى
watch	a football match	يشاهد مباراة كرة القدم	You're welcome.		عفوًا.

Prepositions حروف الجر

a picture of	صورة لـ	clap (ped) for	يصفق لـ
belong to	ينتمى إلى/يخص	proud of	فخور بـ
at the hospital	فى المستشفى	on TV/the radio	فى التلفاز/على الراديو
for no money	بدون مال	What kind of ...?	ما نوع ...؟

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
drive	يقود/يسوق	drove	driven
show	يبين/يوضح	showed	shown
hit	يضرب	hit	hit
throw	يرمى	threw	thrown
write	يكتب	wrote	written
meet	يقابل	met	met

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
finish	ينتهى	start/begin	يبدأ
true	صواب	false	خطأ

Check Point

Choose and complete: to – for – do – make

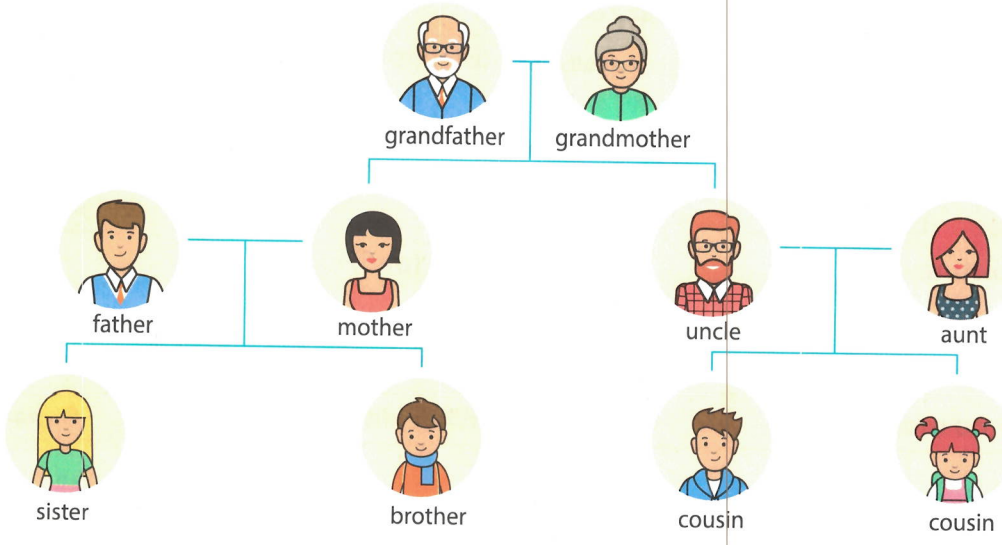
1. Don't ..... noise. Your father is sleeping.
2. That car belongs ..... my uncle.
3. What hobbies do you ..... in your free time?

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 Family members



Relationship

grandfather	is my father's/ mother's father.	
grandmother	is my father's/ mother's mother.	
brother	is my father's/ mother's son.	
sister	is my father's/ mother's daughter.	
uncle	is my father's/ mother's brother.	
aunt	is my father's/ mother's sister.	
cousin	is my uncle's/ aunt's son/ daughter.	

2 **is called** يُسمى / يدُعى

- My grandmother is called Huda.

3 **Let's + inf.** هيا بنا (تستخدم للاقتراح)

- Let's **go** to meet our grandparents.

4 **, too** أيضًا (تأتى فى آخر الجملة المثبتة)

- My mum is a teacher. My dad is a teacher, too.

5 **go + (v + ing)** يذهب / **love – like (noun/ v + ing)** يحب

- I go **swimming** on Saturdays.
- I like **chess/playing** chess.
- I love **football/watching** football matches.

6 **on + (Saturday, Sunday, ...)** تأتى مع أيام الأسبوع

- I play basketball on **Mondays** and **Wednesdays**.
- Tarek goes swimming on **Tuesdays** and he plays football on **Saturdays**.

7 **twins (n)** توءم (اسم يمكن جمعها)

تشير إلى مجموعة من الإخوة أو الأخوات من نفس الأم وفى نفس العمر.

- Eyad and Adham are twins.

twin (adj) توءم (صفة - لا تجمع)

- Sally is my twin sister.
- Hany and Hady are twin brothers.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father is ..... Amr.
   a) calls b) call
   c) called d) cold
2. It's raining. Let's ..... an umbrella.
   a) take b) taking
   c) takes d) took
3. I usually go shopping ..... Sundays.
   a) in b) at
   c) on d) with

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

نفس العمر (3) آلات (2) مجموعة (1)

Definitions التعريفات

band	فرقة موسيقية	a group[1] of people who play music together
chess	شطرنج	a game for 2 people
drums	طبول	musical instruments[2] which you hit to make a noise
twins	توءم	brothers or sisters who are the same age[3]
voluntary work	عمل تطوعى	work you do for no money

هذا الجزء يساعد الطالب على فهم المفردات بشكل أفضل ويقوم بتهيئته للصف الثالث الإعدادى والمرحلة الثانوية.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
finish	ينتهى	end	ينتهى
true	صواب	right	صواب
arrive	يصل	come	يأتى

Suffix اللاحقة

اللاحقة: حرف أو مجموعة من الحروف توضع فى نهاية الكلمة لتكون كلمة مختلفة وغالبًا ما تغير نوع الكلمة.

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
play (v)	يلعب	-er		تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل		player (n)	لاعب
music (n)	موسيقَى	-al		تحويل الاسم لصفة		musical (adj)	موسيقى

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
diary	مفكرة/يوميات	dairy	منتجات الألبان
band	فرقة موسيقية	bend	يثنى / يطوى
uncle	عم/خال	ankle	كاحل القدم

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهه فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى

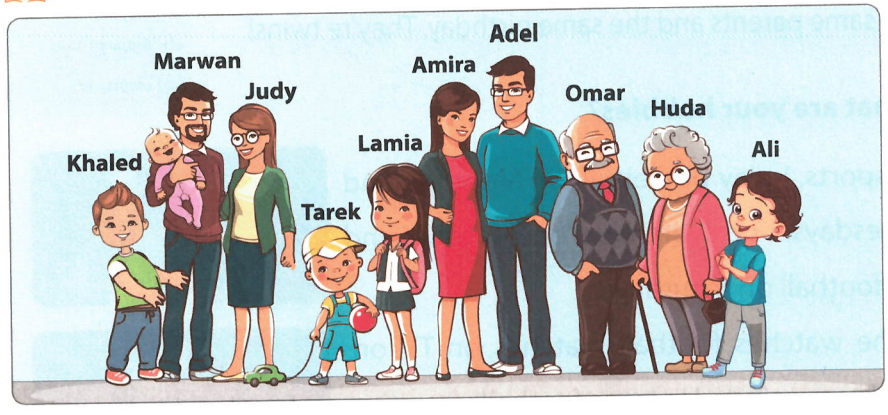
B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- How many members are there in your family?

Read and write the names of the people 1–10. *SB page 3*



(1) الوالدان .....

(2) ابنة .....

(3) أبناء .....

(4) خالة .....

(5) زوج الخالة .....

(6) ابن الخالة .....

Hello! My name's Ali. I'm 13. This is a picture of my family. My mum's name is Amira. She's a teacher. Next to her is my dad. His name is Adel. He's a teacher, too. Both my parents(1) are teachers at my school. They have one daughter(2) – she's my sister, Lamia, and she's 9 years old. And they have two sons(3) – me, and my brother, Khaled. He's 11.

Our grandmother is 64 and she's called Huda. She's my mum's mother. My mum's father is our grandfather – he's called Omar. He's 65. Their daughter's called Judy. She's my mum's sister and she's my aunt(4). My uncle(5) is called Marwan. He is a doctor. Their son is called Tarek, and he's my cousin(6). It's his birthday today – he's 3 years old.

Post-reading question: Choose:

- The main idea of the text is ..... .

a) Ali's family
b) Ali's school
c) Ali's day
d) Ali's hobby

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

daughter /ˈdɔːtəʳ/
picture /pɪktʃəʳ/

Listen and complete the text with possessive adjectives. *WB page 72*

Lara : Hi! **My** name's Lara and this is **my** family. That's **my** brother. **His** name's Ayman. Lina and Hatem are **our** parents. We have one cousin, Khadeeja. **Her** parents are **my** uncle and aunt. **Their** names are Imad and Dina. What about you? What's **your** name?

Pre-reading question: - What's your favourite sport?

Read the interview and answer the question. *SB page 4*

An interview[1] with twin[2] brothers

Meet Hazem and Hatem. They are brothers and they are both aged[3] 12. They have the same parents and the same birthday. They're twins!

Interviewer: What are your hobbies?

Hazem I like sports. I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays. I go swimming on Tuesdays and I play football on Saturdays.

Hatem And he watches football matches on TV on Saturday evenings. He loves football!

Hazem I love football!

Hatem I don't like football but I like music. I play the drums and I listen to music[4].

Hazem He plays the drums in a band[5].

Interviewer: Do you have any hobbies that you both like?

Hazem We play chess together on Saturdays. Hatem usually wins.

Hatem Yes, that's true! And on Saturday afternoons we do voluntary work[6].

Interviewer: What kind of voluntary work?

Hazem We help in the children's hospital.

Hatem We play games with the children and read them stories. It's great!

Lesson 2

(1) مقابلة/ حوار
(2) توءم
(3) بالغ من العمر
(4) الموسيقى
(5) فرقة موسيقية
(6) عمل تطوعى

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

voluntary /vɒləntri/ Wednesday /wenz.deɪ/

Post-reading questions:

1. Who always wins at chess?
2. **Choose:** The word "voluntary" means work you do ..... .
   - a) for a lot of money
   - b) for no money
   - c) for much money
   - d) to be rich

Pre-listening question:

- What are your favourite hobbies?

Listen and complete the diaries. *SB page 5*

Interviewer Can I ask you some more questions?

Hazem Yes, of course.

Interviewer Hazem, when do you play basketball?

Hazem I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays.

Interviewer And when do you play football?

Hazem I play football on Saturdays and I watch football matches on the TV on Saturday evenings.

Interviewer When do you go swimming?

Hazem I go swimming on Tuesdays.

Interviewer Wow, you are busy! Hatem, when do you play the drums?

Hatem I play the drums on Mondays at home. And I play the drums in a band on Thursdays.

Interviewer What do you do on Tuesdays and Wednesdays?

Hatem I listen to music. I like pop music.

Interviewer What do you do on Saturdays?

Hatem I help my mother and I do voluntary work with Hazem. And on Sundays I play chess with Hazem or my dad.

Interviewer Thank you both.

Hazem You're welcome.

Post-listening question:

- List the activities that Hazem does every week.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father and mother are my ..... . المنوفيه ٢٠٢٣
   a) grandchildren b) cousins c) parents d) daughters
2. This is my ..... . He's my mother's brother.
   a) son b) father c) ankle d) uncle
3. Your mum or dad's mother is your ..... . دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) grandmother b) aunt c) grandfather d) grandparents
4. Osama plays the violin in a famous ..... . الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) band b) bank c) bend d) pond
5. I like my ..... Abdullah because he's very kind and friendly.
   a) aunt b) sister c) daughter d) cousin
6. Eman and Amany are ..... . They are sisters and aged 15. المنوفيه ٢٠٢٣
   a) double b) couple c) twins d) pairs
7. I'm ..... . I don't have time to play. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) busy b) free c) ready d) strong
8. We usually ..... swimming in the sea in summer.
   a) play b) go c) do d) make
9. Your sister is your parent's ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) daughter b) cousin c) mother d) aunt
10. My little brother is ..... five years.
    a) ages b) age c) aged d) age's
11. My sister's ..... is in October. It's a special day.
    a) band b) birthday c) diary d) chess
12. I always ..... chess with my dad every Friday.
    a) do b) make c) get d) play
13. My father ..... to football matches on the radio. WB
    a) listens b) plays c) does d) watches

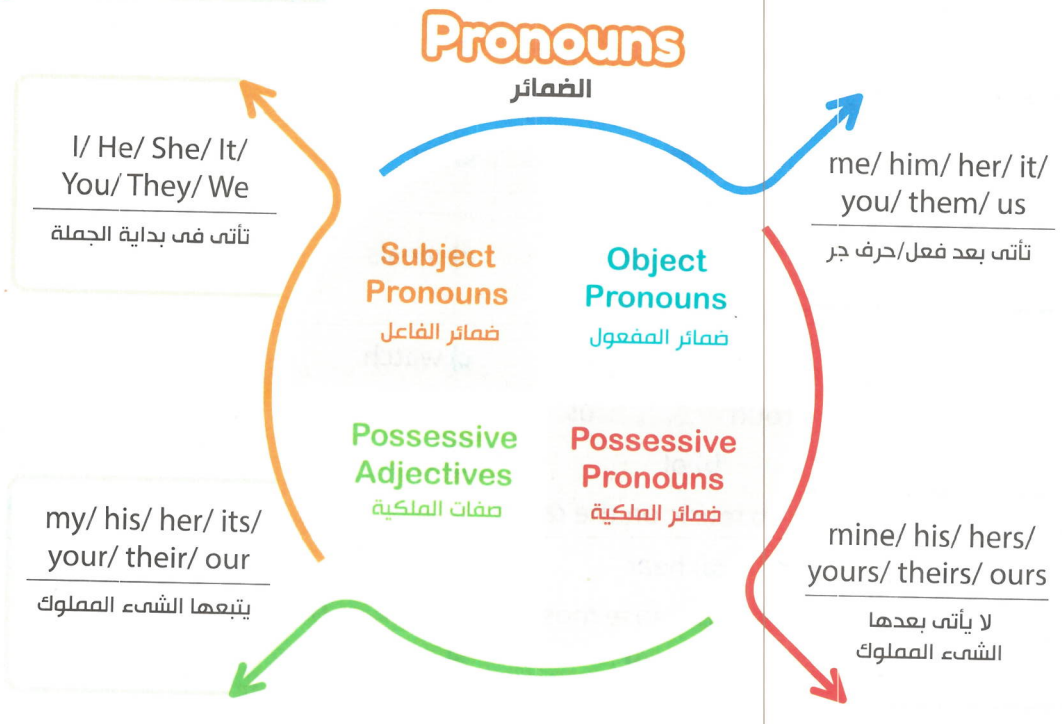
Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We never go to school ..... Fridays. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) in b) at c) for d) on
2. Reading and chess are my favourite ..... . الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) hopes b) foods c) meals d) hobbies
3. I ..... tennis matches on TV. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) wash b) read c) watch d) write
4. Our parents are proud ..... us. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) at b) of c) on d) to
5. I usually ..... to music on the radio. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) listen b) hear c) make d) do
6. The teacher was angry because most boys ..... noise.
   a) made b) read c) watched d) wrote
7. A ..... is a group of people playing musical instruments together. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
   a) parent b) party c) band d) chorus
8. Your parents, brothers and sisters are called your family ..... . بور سعيد ٢٠٢٠
   a) friends b) members c) cousins d) aunts
9. ..... are musical instruments which you hit with your hands or sticks. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) Drums b) Guitars c) Flutes d) Harps
10. My brother has a/an ..... to get a job.
    a) instrument b) interview c) match d) visit
11. I write everything during the day in my ..... .
    a) dairy b) interview c) band d) diary
12. She works at hospital for no money. She does ..... work. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
    a) easy b) voluntary c) worthless d) bad
13. My favourite book is ..... *"Treasure Island"*. الغربية ٢٠٢٠
    a) cold b) called c) pulled d) scored

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ **Quiz** الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language



1 Subject & Object Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل وضمائر المفعول

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل (تأتى فى بداية الجملة)	
I	- I have a shirt.
You	- You have a book.
He	- He has a jacket.
She	- She has a dog.
It	- It has a long neck.
We	- We have a bird.
You	- You have a house.
They	- They have a car.

Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول (تأتى بعد الفعل أو حرف الجر)	
me	- My father bought it **for** me.
you	- This book belongs **to** you.
him	- This jacket belongs **to** him.
her	- I **saw** her playing with it.
it	- I like **watching** it.
us	- This bird **makes** us happy.
you	- This house belongs **to** you.
them	- This car belongs **to** them.

2 Possessive Adjectives & Possessive Pronouns صفات وضمائر الملكية

Possessive adjectives
صفات الملكية

صفات الملكية هى صفات تدل على الملكية، وتختلف عن ضمائر الملكية فى أنها (يأتى بعدها الشىء المملوك)

My	- This is my **pen**.
Your	- This is your **book**.
His	- This is his **jacket**.
Her	- This is her **dress**.
Its	- I have a car, its **colour** is red.
Our	- This is our **house**.
Your	- This is your **car**.
Their	- This is their **bike**.

Possessive pronouns
ضمائر الملكية

ضمائر الملكية هى ضمائر تدل على تملك الشىء وتأتى منفصلة (لا يأتى بعدها الشىء المملوك)

mine	- This pen is mine.
yours	- This book is yours.
his	- This jacket is his.
hers	- This dress is hers.
.....	.....
ours	- This house is ours.
yours	- This car is yours.
theirs	- This bike is theirs.

لاحظ

للسؤال عن مالك الشىء نستخدم (Whose) بمعنى ملك من/لمن.

1. Whose + الشىء المملوك ...?

- **A: Whose** pen is this?
- **B:** It's **my** pen. — **B:** It's **mine**.
- **A: Whose** shoes are these?
- **B:** They are Hoda's shoes. They are **hers**. — **B:** They are Hoda's.

2. belong to + مالك الشىء

تخص/ تنتمى لـ

وتستخدم للتعبير عن الملكية

- This dress **belongs to** my sister.
- These shoes **belong to** my father.
- It's my father's car. It **belongs to** him.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. This book is Mona's. It belongs to hers. (.....)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (her) لأن بعد حرف الجر to نضع ضمير مفعول يعود على الاسم (Mona) وهى مفرد مؤنث.
2. That red bag doesn't belong to me. My is black. (.....)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (Mine) لأن ضمائر الملكية لا يتبعها اسم.
3. Huda and Omar love them parents. (.....)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (their) لأن صفات الملكية يتبعها اسم (parents).

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Throw the ball to ....., please. I am waiting. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) I b) mine c) my d) me
2. Grandfather arrives at 5 o'clock. Let's go to meet ..... . WB
   a) he b) his c) him d) her
3. This is my aunt. ..... name is Amal. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) His b) Her c) Hers d) My
4. Tell ..... about your family. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) I b) my c) me d) mine
5. That's ..... father's car. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) I b) me c) my d) mine
6. Our parents are proud of ..... because we work hard at school. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) her b) us c) our d) she
7. Look at Basmala and Batoul! ..... are walking quickly.
   a) They b) Them c) She d) Her
8. The children took ..... books from the teacher. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) they b) their c) theirs d) mine
9. Ali is my friend. I'm writing a letter to ..... .
   a) him b) he c) she d) her

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. This car belongs to me. It's my. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. Ali is my best friend and her hobby is watching TV. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. Amira and Noha love them parents. (.....) كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
4. That's me pen and this is yours. (.....) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
5. Can you give me you ruler, please? (.....)
6. I have got a brother. He name is Mustafa. (.....) دمياط ٢٠٢٣

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father gave ..... his watch. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) I b) my c) mine d) me
2. The radio belongs to my mother. It's ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) her b) mine c) hers d) his
3. Clap for the football players. ..... played very well. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) Their b) Them c) They d) Theirs
4. We can ride ..... bikes.
   a) ours b) our c) we d) us
5. Your dress is new. ..... is old. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
   a) She b) You c) Mine d) Me
6. Hany and I are friends. ..... live in Tanta.
   a) They b) We c) Us d) Our
7. Munir and Mustafa are twins. ..... sister is called Radwa. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) Their b) They c) We d) Our
8. **A:** ..... pencil is this? **B:** It's Heba's.
   a) Whose b) When c) Where d) What
9. There are two dogs. ..... are brown and white.
   a) It b) Its c) They d) Their

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. That pencil case belongs to Ali. It's <u>him</u>. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. It's her car. <u>He</u> often drives it. (.....) كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
3. My son always does <u>he</u> homework at night. (.....)
4. This red bag belongs to me. It's <u>hers</u>. (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
5. She is my sister. I'm <u>hers</u> brother. (.....) القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your family

كيفية الكتابة عن أسرتك

- My name's (الاسم).
- I'm (عدد السنوات) years old.
- My dad's name is (الاسم). He is a/an (الوظيفة).
- My mum's name is (الاسم). She is a/an (الوظيفة).
- I have (عدد) brothers and (عدد) sisters.
- My grandfather is called (الاسم).
- My grandmother is called (الاسم).
- I have (عدد) cousins. I love my family.

Writing tips

Use capital letters for the beginning of a sentence, names, cities, countries and touristic sites.

استخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع بداية الجملة وأسماء الأشخاص والمدن والدول والمعالم السياحية.

Example

My family tree

My name's Tarek. I'm twelve years old. I love sports. I go to a preparatory school for boys. My dad's name is Ali. He's a teacher of English. He is a good teacher. All the students like him. He's kind and friendly. My mum's name's Aya. She's a nurse. She works in a big hospital. She helps sick people. I have one brother and one sister. My brother is called Hossam. He's 9 years old. My sister is called Nahla. She's 7 years old. My grandfather is called Sabry and my grandmother is called Safia. I have two cousins, Bahaa and Omar. We live in a big city. I love my family very much.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"All about you"

My name's .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Where does your family live?
   a) In Paris. b) In Cairo. c) In a village. d) In Aswan.
2. Where does your father work?
   a) In France. b) In a school. c) In a hospital. d) In an airport.
3. What's your mother's job?
   a) A doctor. b) A nurse. c) An engineer. d) A teacher.
4. How many brothers do you have?
   a) One. b) Two. c) Three. d) None.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like playing the ..... in a band. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) chess b) drums
   c) football d) science
2. Famous people usually have a ..... life. They have no time to relax. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٠
   a) poor b) strange
   c) busy d) normal
3. Your aunt is your mother's ..... . كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
   a) son b) sister
   c) cousin d) daughter
4. That necklace belongs ..... my sister.
   a) on b) with
   c) to d) at
5. "False" is the opposite of ..... .
   a) true b) wrong
   c) proud d) busy
6. Maher ..... voluntary work at a hospital. WB
   a) goes b) gives
   c) plays d) does
7. We are all ..... to be Egyptians. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) pound b) proud
   c) pond d) famous

8. Tarek and ..... cousin went to the park. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢

a) his b) him c) her d) he

9. ..... dresses are these? They are Sara's. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

a) Who's b) Whose c) Who d) What

10. My dog is bigger than ..... .

a) yours b) your c) their d) our

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The dog had his breakfast. (.....)
2. This isn't our ball. Theirs is black and white. (.....)
3. Tarek is my cousin. Today is her birthday. (.....) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
4. Amgad takes her daughter to the funfair to play and have fun. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

"Your family"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 The twins are two children born at the ..... time.

a) same b) different c) similar d) difficult

2 Everyone should ..... a hobby to do.

a) play b) take c) do d) have

3 Here are the photos of Nader and me. ..... are sitting under the tree.

a) Them b) You c) We d) They

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 6 - 8 | WB pages 74 & 75

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

adventure (n)	مغامرة	mountain (n)	جبل
attic (n)	علية المنزل/السندرة	orphan (adj/n)	يتيم
goat (n)	عنزة	sheep (n)	خروف/أغنام

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

airport (n)	مطار	city (n)	مدينة
beach (n)	شاطئ	Egypt (n)	مصر
bread (n)	خبز	How long ...?	كم المدة ...؟

Check Point

Choose and complete: lion – goat – mountain

1 The ..... is my favourite farm animal.

2 This ..... is very high.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

catch > a plane	يلحق بالطائرة	see > birds	يرى الطيور
come > home	يأتى إلى البيت	walk > in the mountains	يمشى فى الجبال
make > a video call	يجرى مكالمة فيديو	work > hard	يعمل بجد

Prepositions — حروف الجر

away from	بعيدًا عن	in bed	فى السرير
at the top of	فى قمة	live with	يعيش مع
by bus	بالأتوبيس	on the phone	على الهاتف
communicate with	يتواصل مع	talk to	يتكلم إلى/مع
good at	جيد فى	think of	يفكر فى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
catch	يلحق بـ	caught	caught	know	يعرف	knew	known
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk	take	يأخذ/ يستغرق	took	taken
feel	يشعر	felt	felt				

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
old	كبير السن	young	صغير السن
big	كبير الحجم	small	صغير الحجم
easy	سهل	difficult	صعب

Check Point

Choose and complete: do – come – make – at

1. Sally is good ..... playing chess.
2. We can ..... video calls using the tablet.
3. When does your father ..... home from work?

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 take + (مدة زمنية) + to + inf. — يستغرق (وقتًا)

- I took two hours to do my homework.

2 help + inf. / to + inf. — يساعد

- The internet can help you communicate with your friends.
- I helped my mother to make lunch yesterday.

3 would ('d) like to + inf. — يود أن/يريد أن

- I would like to see my grandparents every day.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How long does it take ..... to school?
   a) go b) goes c) to go d) to going
2. I'd like ..... when I get older.
   a) travelling b) to travel c) travel d) travels
3. The questions were very difficult. The opposite of "difficult" is "..... ".
   a) hard b) easy c) cute d) unimportant

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions التعريفات

goats	ماعز	animals that are like[1] sheep
orphan	يتيم	a child with no mother or father
attic	علية المنزل/السندرة	a room[2] at the top of a house
city	مدينة	a place with lots of[3] houses and shops

(1) مثل .....

(2) حجرة .....

(3) كثير من

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
beautiful جميل	cute جميل
big كبير الحجم	large كبير الحجم

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word الكلمة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	happy سعيد	unhappy غير سعيد
		important هام/ مهم	unimportant غير مهم

Countries & Cities بلاد ومدن

Cairo	القاهرة	Morocco	المغرب/مراكش
Cape Town	مدينة كيب تاون (جنوب إفريقيا)	Oman	عُمان
South Africa	جنوب إفريقيا	Paris	باريس
London	مدينة لندن (إنجلترا)	France	فرنسا
England	إنجلترا	Switzerland	سويسرا

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word الكلمة	Similar word الكلمة المشابهه
away بعيد	a way طريق/طريقة
sheep خروف	ship سفينة

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهه فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-listening question: - Name two countries in Europe and in Africa.

Listen to Sami and Aya. Which three countries do you hear in the conversations?

SB page 7

(1) فرنسا (2) مصر (3) جنوب إفريقيا

Sami My family lives in Cairo, but my dad works in Paris, France[1]. He goes to the airport on Sundays and he catches a plane to Paris. It takes five hours to fly there. And then, he catches a plane home to Egypt[2] on Thursday evening. He works very hard.

On Saturdays, we play football in the park, and we play chess. I love my dad, and I'm happy when he's at home.

Aya My grandmother and grandfather live in South Africa[3]. They live next to the beach in Cape Town. They have a beautiful house. We go and visit them, but it's a long way. It takes twelve hours to fly there.

I talk to them on the phone, but they don't have a computer, so we can't make a video call. I would like to see them every day, but I can't.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

South /saʊθ/

Cape Town /ˈkāp-ˌtaʊn/

Post-listening question: - Where do Aya's grandparents live?

Complete the text with these words.

WB Page 74

I am Hassan. My family **lives** in Alexandria, but my dad **doesn't work** in Egypt. He works in London. He **goes** to the airport on Sunday evenings and he **catches** a plane to England. He comes home on Thursday evenings. On Saturday, I **don't go** to school, and my father doesn't work. We **play** chess or we go to the park. On Sunday mornings, we **go** swimming. My brother **is** three and he **doesn't** swim. He **watches** us!

Pre-reading question:

- What is your favourite story?

Read the story and put these pictures in the correct order.

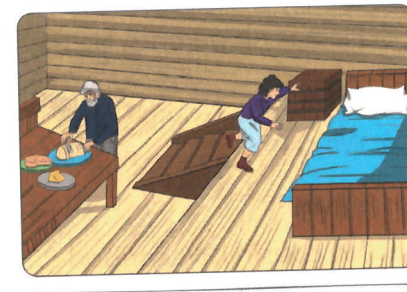
SB page 8

(1) يتيم	(2) جبال	(3) ماعز
(4) علية المنزل	(5) مغامرات	

Heidi

by Johanna Spyri

Heidi is the story of an orphan (1) girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland.
Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains (2) and he has lots of goats (3). Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic (4) of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread and cheese.



Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy!

But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats.
Heidi has lots of adventures (5) in the city.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

orphan /ɔːʳfən/ Switzerland /ˈswɪtsələnd/ attic /ætɪk/

Post-reading question:

- Write a summary of the story.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A room at the top of a house is called a/an ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) kitchen b) bathroom c) mountain d) attic
2. ..... are animals that are like sheep. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) Monkeys b) Cows c) Goats d) Buffaloes
3. He has no parents. He is a/an ..... . دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) twin b) athlete c) orphan d) footballer
4. We can ..... a video call to our cousins in England.
   a) come b) do c) make d) write
5. My cousin is very good ..... drawing. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
   a) in b) of c) at d) about
6. He goes to the ..... on Mondays and he catches a plane to Paris. SB
   a) airport b) station c) club d) school
7. I love my father, and I'm ..... when he's at home.
   a) sad b) happy c) ugly d) bad
8. I always talk to my friends ..... the phone.
   a) of b) in c) on d) at
9. I like my house because it's ..... .
   a) beautiful b) bad c) orphan d) ugly
10. Heidi ..... in a bed in the attic of the house. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
    a) sleeps b) walks c) leaves d) goes
11. Every day, Laila walks in the mountains to ..... birds and flowers.
    a) fly b) see c) eat d) sleep
12. In the morning, I drink milk and eat ..... and cheese.
    a) water b) tea c) bread d) juice
13. I usually go to school ..... school bus.
    a) to b) with c) on d) by

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People like going to the ..... in the summer to swim in the sea.
   a) cave b) lake c) beach d) mountain
2. My dad works in London. He always ..... a plane to go there.
   a) comes b) catches c) sleeps d) arrives
3. I walk to school because my house isn't far away ..... it.
   a) at b) off c) to d) from
4. Heidi ..... in the mountains with the goats every day.
   a) walks b) flies c) watches d) takes
5. Many people use the internet to ..... with each other.
   a) stay b) live
   c) go d) communicate
6. Last week, I had a lot of ..... in Dream Park. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) adventures b) stories c) animals d) mountains
7. It ..... twelve hours to go to Aswan. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) makes b) takes c) gives d) talks
8. She is an orphan girl, so she goes to live ..... her grandfather.
   a) at b) about c) to d) with
9. He lives in a small house in the mountains and he has lots of ..... .
   a) airports b) planes c) goats d) tigers
10. We should work ..... to make our country great.
    a) hard b) easy c) busy d) free
11. When I ..... home, I have something to eat. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) take b) give c) have d) come
12. Egypt is the most important ..... in Africa. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
    a) village b) town c) city d) country
13. I like my grandmother, so I would like ..... her every day.
    a) to seeing b) seeing c) see d) to see

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

The present simple tense — زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط فى التعبير عن:

1 Facts
حقائق

- The sun rises in the morning.
- The earth goes around the sun.

2 Habits and routines
العادات والروتين اليومى

- We usually play tennis on Friday.
- Ola listens to music every day.

Form التكوين

I / You / We / They (اسم جمع) > inf.
I play football at the club.

He / She / It (اسم مفرد) > inf. + s/es/ies
She walks to school every day.

لاحظ

1. يتم إضافة (es) للفعل المنتهى بـ s/sh/ch/o/x
- Leila washes the dishes in the morning.
- Hana goes to school on foot.

2. يتم إضافة (ies) للفعل المنتهى بحرف (y) ويسبقها حرف ساكن
- Salma studies hard.
- The baby cries when he's hungry.

- لنفى الجملة نستخدم (don't/doesn't) بعد الفاعل ويتبعهما المصدر.

Negative النفى

I / You / We / They (اسم جمع) > don't + inf.
I don't play football.

He / She / It (اسم مفرد) > doesn't + inf.
She doesn't walk to school.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. My brother watch TV every night. (.....)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (watches) لأن الفاعل (My brother) مفرد، والفعل ينتهى بـ (ch).

2. Adel and Sami studies hard for their exams. (.....)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (study) لأن الفاعل (Adel and Sami) جمع.

Yes/No questions

Do I / you / we / they (اسم جمع) > inf. ...?

Question السؤال

Does he / she / it (اسم مفرد) > inf. ...?

A: Do you **play** football?
B: Yes, I do./ **B:** No, I don't.

A: Does she **walk to school** every day?
B: Yes, she does./ **B:** No, she doesn't.

Wh-questions

Q. word + do/does + subj. + **inf. ...?**

- Where does Tarek **live**?
- How do you **go** to school?

يمكن السؤال باستخدام (Verb to "be") مع الصفات

Am/ Is/ Are + الفاعل + حرف جر / اسم / صفة ...?

1 Are you **a teacher**?

2 Is Ali **ready** for the match?

لاحظ

1

Verb "to be" يكون

يتكون فى المضارع من: am, is, are

- I am (am not) a teacher.
- He is (isn't) happy.
- They are (aren't) at home.

2

Verb "to have" يملك

يتكون فى المضارع من: has, have

- Mona has (doesn't have) a nice car.
- I have (don't have) money.
- We have (don't have) a big house.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Read and correct the underlined words:

1 Do she live in Cairo? (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Does) لوجود (she).

2 My brother doesn't travels to Paris. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (travel) لأن (doesn't) يتبعها فعل فى المصدر.

3 The boys don't happy because their father is abroad. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (aren't) لأن (verb "to be") يتبعه صفة/اسم.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I ..... to bed at ten every day. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) goes b) go c) went d) going
2. How long does it ..... you to come to school? WB
   a) takes b) taking c) took d) take
3. Heidi doesn't ..... with her parents. She lives with her grandfather.
   a) live b) lives c) lived d) living
4. Maha ..... like swimming.
   a) not b) don't c) doesn't d) isn't
5. ..... your parents live in Giza? الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) Are b) Do c) Does d) Have
6. ..... you play chess? القاهره ٢٠٢٣
   a) Doing b) Do c) Did d) Does
7. How does Sami ..... when his father is at home? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) feel b) feels c) felt d) feeling
8. What ..... you listen to on the radio? أزهر/قنا ٢٠٢٢
   a) does b) are c) were d) do
9. This bird ..... beautiful colours.
   a) have b) has c) having d) to have

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She is watching a nice programme every evening. (.....) الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
2. Does he gets up early? (.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
3. Ali don't play football after school. (.....) دمياط ٢٠٢٣
4. Does you walk to school? (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
5. My father be in France for a holiday. (.....)
6. Where are you come from? (.....) الغربية ٢٠٢٢

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Reham is good at tennis. She ..... it every day. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) plays b) play c) playing d) played
2. Mona ..... go to school on Friday. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
   a) don't b) isn't c) hasn't d) doesn't
3. We both ..... English books in the evenings. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) is reading b) are reading c) read d) reads
4. Fawzi and Hamdi ..... painting. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) love b) loves c) loving d) be loved
5. They ..... a lot of milk.
   a) drinks b) don't drink c) aren't drink d) drinking
6. What sport ..... like? الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) you don't b) don't you c) doesn't you d) you doesn't
7. I don't ..... to music. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) listens b) listen c) listening d) listened
8. ..... Adel at home now? الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) Is b) Does c) Do d) Has
9. Samy ..... go to school on Saturdays. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) don't b) doesn't c) hasn't d) isn't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I doesn't usually listen to pop music. (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
2. Monkeys makes a lot of noise. (.....)
3. What subject does he studied? (.....) القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
4. What do her hobbies? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
5. I has my breakfast at school. (.....)
6. Are you speak English well? (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Ask and answer questions about hobbies

السؤال والإجابة عن الهوايات

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف | **Response** جملة الرد

online

عند سؤال شخص عما إذا كان يمارس هواية أم لا نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

Do you listen to music? — هل تستمع إلى الموسيقى؟

No, I don't. — لا.

Where does your father work? — أين يعمل والدك؟

He works in a bank in Cairo. — يعمل فى بنك بالقاهرة.

How long does it take you to come to school? — ما طول المدة التى تستغرقها لكى تأتى إلى المدرسة؟

It takes about 30 minutes. — حوالى ٣٠ دقيقة.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

▶ **Noha is asking Soha about her day.** الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

Noha : Hello, Soha. How are you?

Soha : (1)..... .

Noha : (2).....?

Soha : I get up at 6 a.m.

Noha : (3).....?

Soha : I go to school by bus.

Noha : What do you do on Fridays?

Soha : (4)..... .

Noha : Do you enjoy your time?

Soha : (5)..... .

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about a member of your family كيفية الكتابة عن فرد من أسرتك

- My (..... 's) name is (الاسم).
- He's (العدد) years old.
- He lives in (المكان).
- He is (الوظيفة).
- His hobbies are (الهوايات).

Writing tips

A paragraph should have at least 10 sentences.

- يجب أن تحتوى الفقرة على عشر جمل على الأقل.

Example

My grandfather

My name is Omar. I'm twelve years old. I have a big family. My grandfather's name is Kamal. He's 65 years old. He lives on a farm in Benha. He's a farmer. He grows apples. His favourite food is fish and rice. His hobbies are reading and fishing. I love him so much because he is friendly and kind. He always helps me and the other members of the family. We usually visit him at the weekend. He tells us interesting stories. He helps us grow different plants on his farm. I'm really proud of him.

2. How to write about your hobby كيفية الكتابة عن هوايتك

- I like playing (اللعبة/الرياضة).
- I play (اللعبة/الرياضة) every week.
- I play it with (الشخص/الأشخاص).
- I play it at the (المكان).
- It's my favourite.

Example

The hobby I like

It's really important to do a hobby when you are free. There are many hobbies to do in life. Everyone has a different hobby. Some people like sports and others like reading, but I like playing chess. It's a game for all ages. This game is for two people. I like to play it on Fridays. I play it with my friends at home. I can play it online with people all over the world. My grandfather taught me how to play chess. Sometimes, I play it on the computer. I like it very much. It's my favourite.

17.5

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

دمياط ٢٠٢٣

My name is Amgad. I live with my family in Giza. I have one sister. She is a student at preparatory school. She goes to school at 8:00 a.m. and returns home at 3:00 p.m. My father is an accountant. He works for a big company. He gets up very early and goes to his work. He comes back home at night. My mother is a teacher. She teaches geography. I get up at 9 o'clock in the morning. I stay at home with my grandmother. I would like to be six to go to school and meet my friends.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's this passage about? .....
2. Where does Amgad's father work? .....
3. Why do you think Amgad doesn't get up early? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The family lives in ..... .
   a) the countryside b) a city c) a village d) the desert
5. The underlined word "She" refers to Amgad's ..... .
   a) teacher b) sister c) grandmother d) mother
6. Amgad wants to be six to go to ..... .
   a) school b) home c) a company d) a farm

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... is a room at the top of the house. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
   a) kitchen b) break c) attic d) garage
2. A/An ..... is a child with no father or mother. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) twin b) orphan c) driver d) happy
3. When the weather is hot, we go to the ..... . القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) beach b) desert c) moon d) sun
4. Mona is not making a video ....., but she is talking to her friend. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) cell b) call c) photo d) line
5. My uncle travelled to a lot of countries like England and ..... .
   a) Rome b) France c) London d) Paris
6. It's an adventure to ..... a mountain.
   a) climb b) do c) go d) walk

7. I play ..... my friends in the club.

a) in b) of c) at d) with

8. Soha ..... go swimming on windy days. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

a) don't b) isn't c) aren't d) doesn't

9. Does Hala ..... playing tennis? القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) like b) likes c) liked d) to like

10. She ..... shopping every week. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) goes b) go c) going d) gone

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Does you listen to music every day? (.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
2. Does Sama has a blue dress? (.....)
3. He doesn't plays tennis. (.....)
4. I am not very good in drawing. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your father"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

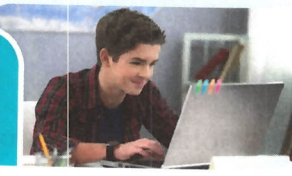
Read and correct the underlined words: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Do you ready for the concert? (.....)
2. What sport are you good? (.....)
3. Adel has a car, so he goes to work by bus. (.....)
4. **A:** Is Salma happy? **B:** No, she isn't sad. (.....)

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6



A Vocabulary

SB pages 9-11 | WB pages 76 - 78

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

athlete (n)	لاعب رياضى	gymnastics (n)	ألعاب الجمباز
athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى	Olympics (n)	الألعاب الأوليمبية
balance (d) (v)	يوازن	the country (n)	الريف
best friend	أفضل صديق	top (n/adj)	أفضل/أول
gymnast (n)	لاعب/لاعبة جمباز	train (for) (ed) (v)	يتدرب (لمدة)

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

busy life	حياة مشغولة/مزدحمة	physics (n)	الفيزياء
description (n)	وصف	swimming pool (n)	حوض السباحة
nearby (adj/adv)	مجاور	work (ed) (v) hard	يعمل بجد

Check Point

Choose and complete: best – gymnastics – physics

1 I like ..... . It's my favourite subject.

2 Adel is my ..... friend. He's a lot of fun.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

achieve > dreams	يحقق أحلامًا	have > food/a drink	يتناول طعامًا/شرابًا
find > difficult	يجد صعوبة	stay > strong	يبقى قويًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a photo of	صورة لـ	move to	ينتقل إلى

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
healthy	صحى	unhealthy	غير صحى
strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف

Check Point

Choose and complete: weak – strong – of

1. That's a photo ..... my best friend.
2. The lion is a ..... animal.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 so that + فاعل + can/could + inf. لكى

- Habiba eats healthy food so that she can stay strong.
- I went to England so that I could learn English.

2 physics/ mathematics/ gymnastics/ athletics

بعض الكلمات التى تنتهى بـ (ics) هى أسماء مفردة

- Gymnastics **is** a difficult sport.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
healthy	صحى	well	بصحة جيدة
strong	قوى	powerful	قوى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
athlete (n)	لاعب رياضى	-ics	تحويل اسم الفاعل لاسم	athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى
gymnast (n)	لاعبة جمباز			gymnastics (n)	ألعاب الجمباز

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	healthy	صحى	unhealthy	غير صحى

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهه
weak	ضعيف	week	أسبوع
dreams	أحلام	drums	طبول

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 6

Pre-reading question:

- How can we keep fit?

Read about Habiba Marzouk. Which sport makes her happy? *SB page 10*

Habiba Marzouk achieves[1] her dreams[2]

Habiba Marzouk is a gymnast[3]. She is 18 and lives in Cairo with her family. Habiba has a very busy life. She goes to school and she studies hard. In the evenings, she trains[4] for five or six hours. She is a top[5] gymnast in Africa and she wants to go to the Olympics[6].

(1) يحقق/ ينجز
(2) أحلام
(3) لاعبة جمباز
(4) يتدرب
(5) أفضل/ أول
(6) الألعاب الأوليمبية
(7) ألعاب الجمباز

Habiba's family always helps her. She eats healthy food so that she can stay strong. Gymnastics[7] is a difficult sport but it makes her happy.

Note :

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

gymnast /dʒɪmnæst/ gymnastics /dʒɪmnæstɪks/ Olympics /ə'lɪmpɪks/

Post-reading question:

- Why do you think Habiba is happy?

Read and punctuate. *WB Page 77*

My name is **O**mar. **N**abila is my sister. She lives with me and my family in **D**amietta. Her favourite food is fish. I like cheese. We have the same hobbies. We like swimming! We go swimming on **S**aturday and **S**unday. My sister plays chess, too. I do not like chess. How old is **N**abila? She is 12. **T**hat is the same as me. I am 12, too.

Pre-reading question:

- What's your best friend's name?

Read and complete the text about Ali's sister Lamia. *SB page 11*

My name's Lamia. I'm nine years old. I **live** in Aswan with my family. My parents **are** teachers. My brother Ali **is** 13 years old and Khaled is nine. Khaled goes swimming every Friday.

I **listen** to music with **my** brothers. Ali **plays** football at school and he watches football matches on TV. Khaled **goes** swimming every Friday. There is a swimming pool near our house. My best friend is called Aya. We **play** basketball at school, and we're both in the school team. **Our** team is very good!

Post-reading question:

- Do you think that Lamia lives a healthy life? Why/Why not?

Complete the sentences with a possessive adjective. *WB Page 78*

Munir and Mustafa are twins. **Their** sister is called Radwa. **Her** hobby is tennis and she is my best friend. I live with **my** brother and **his** name is Sayed. **Our** house is in Cairo. What is **your** best friend's name?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Habiba Marzouk is a famous ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) gymnastic b) gymnastics c) gym d) gymnast
2. A baby bird is very ..... . It can't fly for many days. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) poor b) weak c) week d) strong
3. Fresh food is good for you and it is ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) unhealthy b) bad c) healthy d) deadly
4. Habiba Marzouk wants to ..... her dreams and go to the Olympics. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) give b) play c) check d) achieve
5. Habiba eats well because ..... is a difficult sport. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
   a) gym b) gymnastics c) gymnast d) gymnasium
6. Ahmed has a very ..... life. He goes to school and studies hard all the time. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) ugly b) free c) busy d) dirty
7. Athletes work hard to ..... their studies and their sport. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) bring b) spell c) destroy d) balance
8. As a gymnast, she ..... for 5 or 6 hours daily. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) trains b) teaches c) studies d) swims
9. Eating healthy food helps us to ..... strong.
   a) find b) stay c) achieve d) move
10. We usually have ..... when we sleep.
    a) habits b) hobbies c) drums d) dreams
11. I like to live in the ..... because it's quiet.
    a) country b) city c) town d) attic
12. She is a top gymnast and she wants to go to the ..... .
    a) physics b) athletics c) Olympics d) gymnastics
13. My father always ..... a drink after dinner.
    a) eats b) has c) trains d) moves

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Talking about your best friend

التحدث عن صديقك المفضل

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
What's his/her name?	ما اسمه/ اسمها؟	My best friend's name is (.....).	اسم صديقى/ صديقتى المفضلة هو (.....).
How old is he/she?	كم عمره/ عمرها؟	He's/She's (العدد) years old.	عمره/ عمرها ..... عامًا.
Where does he/she live?	أين يعيش/ تعيش؟	He/She lives in (المكان).	يعيش/ تعيش فى .....
What are his/her hobbies?	ما هواياته/ هواياتها؟	His/Her hobbies are (الهوايات).	هواياته/ هواياتها هى ..... .

online

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue: الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

Ahmed is asking Omar about his best friend.

Ahmed : What is your best friend's name?

Omar : (1)..... .

Ahmed : Fares! (2).....?

Omar : He's 14 years old.

Ahmed : What does he like?

Omar : (3)..... .

Ahmed : Sports! (4).....?

Omar : His favourite sport is football.

Ahmed : Is he friendly and kind?

Omar : (5)..... .

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali asks Hani about his best friend.

Ali : Who is your best friend, Hani?

Hani : (1)..... .

Ali : (2).....?

Hani : He is 13. He is in the same classroom.

Ali : What are his hobbies?

Hani : (3)..... .

Ali : (4).....?

Hani : His favourite sport is basketball.

Ali : Is he tall?

Hani : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Good students work hard to ..... their dreams in life. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) forget b) watch c) fail d) achieve
2. I eat healthy food to stay ..... . الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
   a) weak b) strong c) unhealthy d) poor
3. It's ..... to eat fruit and vegetables. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) warm b) dirty c) unhealthy d) healthy
4. Athletes work hard to ..... their studies, work and families. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) practise b) train c) balance d) achieve
5. My sister likes sports. She's a famous ..... . الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   a) gymnast b) charger c) orphan d) jungle
6. The athlete is ..... hard to be in the next Olympics. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) using b) raining c) travelling d) training
7. She has a very busy ..... . She goes to school and studies hard.
   a) live b) life c) alive d) leaf

8. What ..... he like doing when he is at home? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) do b) does c) is d) are

9. My grandparents ..... in the city. They live in the country.

a) doesn't live b) don't live c) lives d) live

10. London ..... in England.

a) is b) am c) are d) be

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Where do your grandfather live? (.....)
2. Can you help my with the homework? (.....)
3. Do you busy today? (.....)
4. Ghada like healthy food. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

"Your best friend and why you like him/ her"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Famous people always ..... a very busy life.

a) move b) find c) stay d) have

2. Some girls ..... it difficult to play football.

a) do b) have c) find d) make

3. We usually visit our grandparents ..... Sunday evenings.

a) in b) on c) at d) for

Review on Unit 1

Vocabulary

achieve (d)	يحقق/ ينجز
gymnastics	ألعاب الجمباز
adventure	مغامرة
interview	مقابلة/ حوار
aged	بالغ من العمر
mountain	جبل
athlete	لاعب رياضى/ قوى
Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية
attic	علية المنزل/ السندرة
orphan	يتيم
balance (d)	يوازن
band	فرقة موسيقية
twin	توءم
gymnast	لاعب/لاعبة جمباز
voluntary work	عمل تطوعى
daughter	ابنة
great-grandparents	أجداد الأجداد
great-grandchildren	أبناء الأحفاد
uncle	عم/خال - زوج العمة/الخالة
parents	الوالدان
grandchildren	أحفاد

Language

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل

I/ We/ You/ He/ She/ It/ They

- **They** go to school by bus.

Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول

me/ us/ you/ him/ her/ it/ them

- I go to school with **them**.

Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية

my/ our/ your/ his/ her/ its/ their

- **Their** bus moves at 7:30.

Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية

mine/ ours/ yours/ his/ hers/ theirs

- This school is **theirs**.

The present simple tense:

Affirmative:

- They play football.
- He plays football.

Negative:

- They don't play football.
- He doesn't play football.

Questions:

- Do they play football?
- Does he play football?

Skills

Ask and answer questions about hobbies

السؤال والإجابة عن الهوايات

A: Do you listen to music?
B: No, I don't.

A: Where does your father work?
B: He works in a bank in Cairo.

A: How long does it take you to come to school?
B: It takes about 30 minutes.

Talking about your best friend

التحدث عن صديقك المفضل

- What's his/her name?
- My best friend's name is ..... .
- How old is he/she?
- He's/She's ..... years old.
- Where does he/she live?
- He/She lives in ..... .
- What are his/her hobbies?
- His/Her hobbies are ..... .

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 1

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Heidi lives with her grandfather because she is ..... .
   a) ill b) tall
   c) an orphan d) pretty
2. Heidi's grandfather lives in a ..... .
   a) big house b) small house
   c) flat d) villa
3. Heidi sleeps in/on the ..... .
   a) attic b) bathroom
   c) ground d) living room
4. Heidi drinks ..... .
   a) coffee b) tea
   c) juice d) milk

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali and Sami are talking about hobbies.

Ali : Can I ask you some questions?

Sami : (1)..... .

Ali : Do you have any hobbies?

Sami : (2)..... . I like sports.

Ali : (3).....?

Sami : My favourite sport is football.

Ali : (4).....?

Sami : I play football on Fridays and Saturdays. What about you?

Ali : (5)..... .

Sami : Great! Let's play together.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Salim. I'm thirteen years old. My best friend is called Salah. He and I study together. His home is only a ten-minute walk from my place. He is funny and **friendly**. We are always happy to be with each other. He is always kind and helpful to me. When I don't go to school because I'm ill, he comes to my house to ask about me. When he doesn't come to school, I ask about **him**. We also play football together on Fridays. We have the same hobbies. We like swimming! We go swimming on Saturday and Sunday.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.....

2. Why do you think Salim likes Salah?

.....

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**him**" refer to?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Salim and Salah are ..... .
   a) sisters b) brothers c) students d) teachers
5. The underlined word "friendly" means ..... .
   a) strong b) well c) kind d) healthy
6. Salah's house is ..... Salim's house.
   a) near b) far c) opposite d) behind

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. These brothers are the same age. They are ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) cousins b) sisters c) twins d) parents
2. Your dad's brother is your ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) uncle b) aunt c) sister d) brother
3. People do ..... work without getting money. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
   a) voluntary b) business c) group d) job

4. Every day, Heidi walks in the ..... with the goats.
   a) airports b) mountains c) schools d) pools
5. She is a/an ..... girl. She lost her father.
   a) busy b) orphan c) ugly d) happy
6. Murad works hard to ..... his dreams. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) achieve b) archive c) receive d) believe
7. I ..... a lot to play the guitar well.
   a) take b) sleep c) achieve d) train
8. **A:** Which house is yours? **B:** ..... is next door. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Yours b) My c) Ours d) Their
9. Basel doesn't ..... the piano. He plays the flute. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) play b) plays c) played d) playing
10. Amira ..... with her family in Damietta.
   a) to live b) living c) lives d) live

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Adel can't find him book. (.....) بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
2. The girl like her teacher so much. (.....) الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
3. Gymnastics are my favourite sport. (.....) دمياط ٢٠٢٣
4. What sport do you good at? (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite hobby"

.....

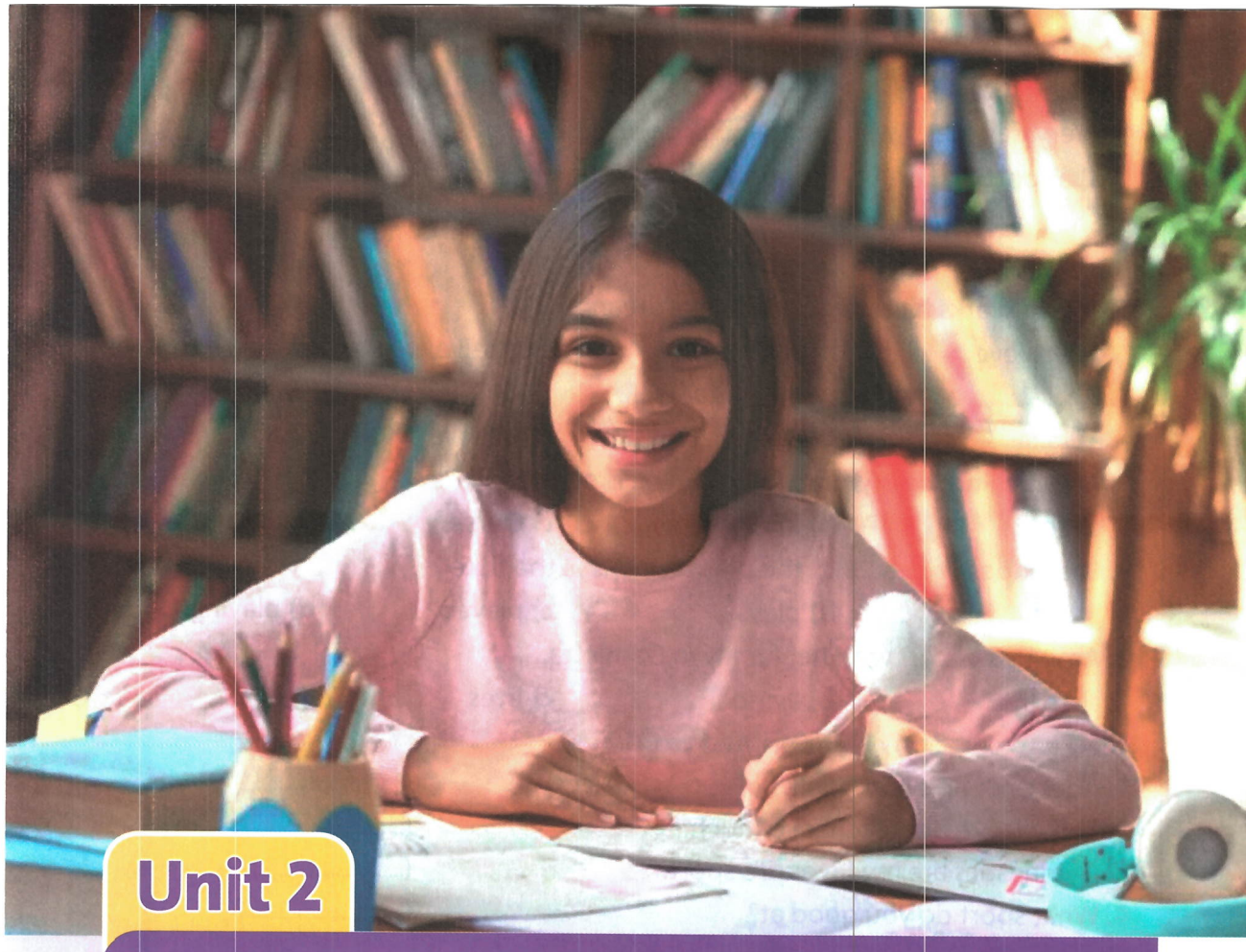
.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 2

It's my favourite subject

Objectives of the unit

Reading	Descriptions of schools around the world
Writing	A paragraph about your journey to school; A paragraph about your daily life
Listening	A discussion about timetables
Speaking	Asking and answering about school and timetables
Language	Adverbs of frequency; possessive 's and s'
Life Skills	Critical thinking; self-management

Tapescripts

SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 12 - 15 | WB pages 79 & 80

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bell (n)	جرس	library (n)	مكتبة (للقراءة)
daily life	الحياة اليومية	playground (n)	ملعب
far away	بعيدًا	timetable (n)	جدول الحصص
hall (n)	صالة/قاعة	typical (adj)	معتاد/نموذجى/مثالى
head teacher (n)	مدير المدرسة	weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
School subjects المواد الدراسية			
Arabic (n)	اللغة العربية	maths (n)	الرياضيات
art (n)	التربية الفنية/الرسم	music (n)	التربية الموسيقية
computer studies (n)	دراسات الحاسب	religion (n)	الدين
drama (n)	الدراما (أدب المسرحيات)	science (n)	العلوم
English (n)	اللغة الإنجليزية	social studies (n)	الدراسات الاجتماعية
home economics (n)	الاقتصاد المنزلى		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

different (adj)	مختلف	road (n)	طريق
half past	ونصف	student (n)	طالب
quarter past	وربع	study (~~y~~ied) (v)	يدرس/يذاكر
quarter to	إلا ربع	trip (n)	رحلة

Check Point

Choose and complete: sport – subject – library

1. We read books in the school ..... .
2. My favourite ..... is science.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do > homework	يؤدى الواجب المنزلى	have >	a lesson	لديه حصة
get > home	يصل إلى البيت		breakfast	يتناول الإفطار
live > in Nairobi	يعيش فى مدينة نيروبى	take >	a long time	يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

at break	فى الفسحة	It's time for ...	حان الوقت لـ ...
get to	يصل إلى	ways of	طرق لـ

Check Point

Choose and complete: do – at – for – have

1. I play with my friends ..... break.
2. I ..... my homework in the evening.
3. I ..... my breakfast with my friends at school.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
choose يختار	chose	chosen	mean يعنى	meant	meant
get up ينهض/يستيقظ	got up	got up	ring يرن/يدق	rang	rung
hear يسمع	heard	heard	have لديه/عنده	had	had

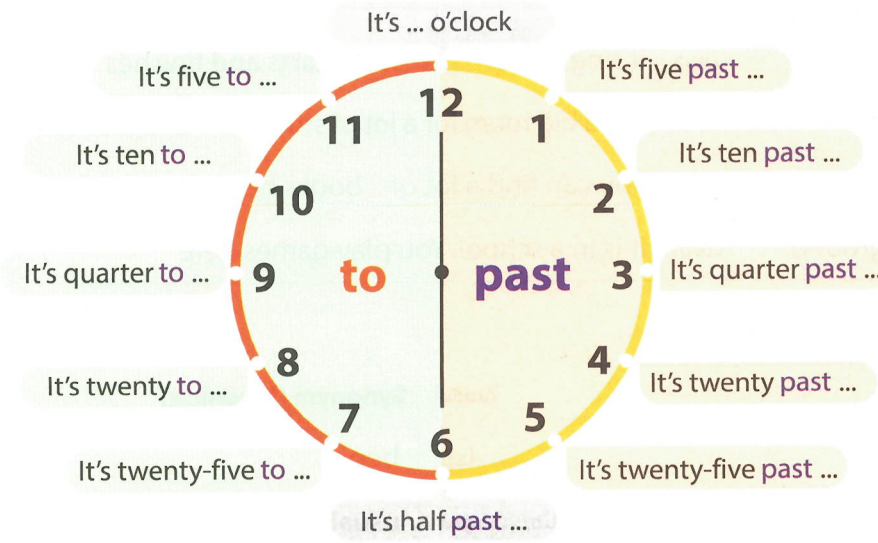
Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
different مختلف	the same نفس الشىء
far away بعيدًا	near قريب
start يبدأ	finish ينهى
typical معتاد/نموذجى/مثالى	unusual غير معتاد

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 Ways to tell/say the time: طرق الإخبار عن الوقت:



2 computer studies – home economics – social studies – physics

- المواد الدراسية تعامل معاملة المفرد.

- Social studies **is** my favourite subject.
- Home economics **starts** at ten thirty on Sunday.

3 drive + شخص يوصل شخصًا بالسيارة

- My father always drives me to school.

4 first أولاً / then ثم / second الثانى / next التالى/بعد ذلك

نستخدم الكلمات السابقة عند سرد أحداث أو رواية قصة

- First, I visited my grandmother.
- Then, I met my friends in the club.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Physics ..... my favourite subject.
   a) am b) is c) are d) does
2. My mum has a meeting at ..... past nine next Sunday.
   a) half b) have c) halve d) quieter
3. To get the opposite of "usual", we add the prefix "..... ".
   a) im- b) a- c) in- d) un-

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions التعريفات

bell	جرس	it rings when[1] a lesson starts and finishes
hall	قاعة/صالة	it is a big room for a lot of students[2] and teachers
library	مكتبة (للقراءة)	you can find a lot of[3] books here
playground	ملعب	it is in a school. You play games here

(1) عندما .....

(2) الطلاب .....

(3) كثير من

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
start	يبدأ	begin	يبدأ
typical	نموذجى/مثالى/معتاد	usual	معتاد

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
differ (v)	يختلف	-ent		تحول الفعل لصفة		different (adj)	مختلف
teach (v)	يُدرس/يُعلم	-er		تحول الفعل لاسم فاعل		teacher (n)	مدرس

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-		تعطى عكس المعنى		usual (adj)	معتاد	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهه
bell	جرس	bill	فاتورة
hall	قاعة/صالة	hill	تل
past	و	paste	معجون

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهه فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- What do you like most about your school?

Listen and complete the timetable. *SB page 13*

Amal I like the new timetable[1]. What's your favourite day, Injy?

Injy I like Thursday. We have Social Studies[2] first on Thursday. Then we have English[3] and then we go to Science[4]. That's my favourite subject.

Amal My favourite day's today. We have Maths[5] first and second lesson after break today. I love Maths! Then we have Science and Art[6].

Injy I like Art too, but I'm not very good at it. What do we have tomorrow?

Amal English, then Religion[7] is next, then Arabic[8] and then Home Economics[9]. After break, we have Social Studies. Then we have Science and Computer Studies[10]. Finally, we have Music[11].

Injy When do we have Drama[12]?

Amal That's the last two lessons on a Tuesday and the last lesson Wednesday. It's time for the next lesson now! See you later!

(1) جدول الحصص
(2) الدراسات الاجتماعية
(3) اللغة الإنجليزية
(4) العلوم
(5) الرياضيات
(6) الرسم
(7) الدين
(8) اللغة العربية
(9) الاقتصاد المنزلى
(10) دراسات الكمبيوتر
(11) الموسيقى
(12) الدراما

Note: تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

social /soʊʃəl/ economics /iːkənɒmɪks/ religion /rɪlɪdʒən/

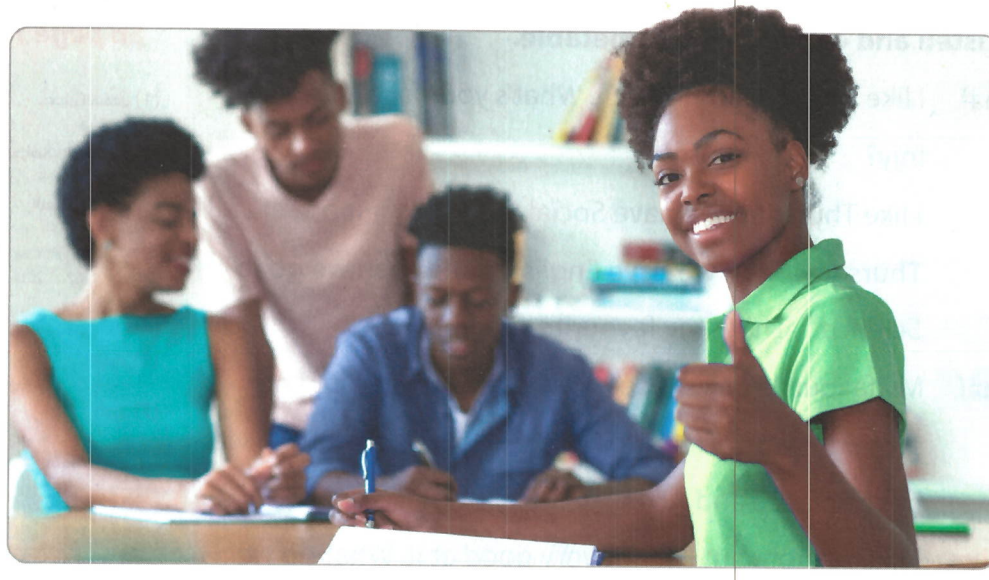
Post-listening questions:

1. What's Injy's favourite subject?
2. Do you think Injy and Amal like Drama? Why?

Pre-reading question: - How long does it take to go to school?

Read the text again and answer the questions. *SB page 14*

Daily life around the world



"I'm Akeyo. I live in Nairobi, in Kenya. This is a typical [1] day for me. On school days, I get up at half past six. I usually have breakfast with my family. My school is far away [2], so we never walk there. My mum and dad drive us there. It always takes a long time because the roads are busy. When we hear the bell [3] at eight o'clock, we go to the school hall [4]. We have four lessons, then it is break. I usually talk with my friends in the playground [5], but sometimes we go to the library [6] to read books. After break, we have more lessons. We have lunch at half past twelve. School finishes at four o'clock. When I get home, I have something to eat, then I always do my homework. My brother and I usually watch TV before we go to bed at about half past eight. I have a busy day!"

(1) نموذجى/مثالى

(2) بعيدًا جدًا

(3) جرس

(4) صالة/قاعة

(5) ملعب (فناء المدرسة)

(6) مكتبة (للقراءة)

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Nairobi /naɪˈrəʊbi/ typical /tɪpɪkəl/

Post-reading question:

- How do you think Akeyo feels when she returns home?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... is the subject of how to learn numbers. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) Art b) Maths c) Arabic d) Music
2. My son is good at ..... . He can draw pictures. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) English b) Arabic c) Maths d) Art
3. We use a mouse in ..... lessons. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
   a) Arabic b) art c) maths d) computer studies
4. We learn about countries in ..... lessons. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
   a) social studies b) religion c) maths d) computer studies
5. The opposite of "the same" is "..... ". القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) similar b) different c) equal d) alike
6. For homework, we often read books from the ..... . WB
   a) laboratory b) library c) playground d) hall
7. I usually get up at half ..... six.
   a) past b) post c) paste d) to
8. I ..... Arabic and English on Sunday.
   a) go b) make c) have d) stay
9. I go to school library at ..... . الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) break b) brake c) park d) bark
10. On a ..... weekend, Omar reads books at the club library. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) hard b) musical c) bad d) typical
11. We learn about food in home ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) studies b) economics c) gymnastics d) physics
12. We have eight ..... on a school day.
    a) lessons b) numbers c) languages d) bells
13. All the children in our school go to the ..... when the head teacher wants to talk to us. WB
    a) bell b) hall c) library d) playground

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Social studies and science are school ..... . الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
   a) objects b) subjects c) teams d) groups
2. At break, I play games with my friend in the ..... . بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
   a) hall b) classroom c) playground d) office
3. You can look at the ..... to know how many lessons you'll have today.
   a) desk b) chair c) timetable d) bag
4. What's your ..... subject? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) favourite b) favour c) fat d) heavy
5. I'm not very good ..... English.
   a) in b) at c) on d) of
6. ..... is an interesting subject.
   a) English b) Gym c) Volleyball d) Handball
7. I usually ..... my homework before I sleep.
   a) say b) give c) make d) do
8. It's half ..... seven. It's time for school. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) past b) pass c) to d) too
9. She's great at ..... . She likes art. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) watching b) playing c) swimming d) drawing
10. We study people and how they live in the ..... lessons. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) science b) social studies c) maths d) drama
11. I usually ..... lunch at home with my family.
    a) do b) get c) have d) make
12. We have English first on Monday. ..... we have Arabic.
    a) Last b) Past c) Then d) After
13. A ..... is a big room for a lot of students and teachers.
    a) hill b) hall c) bell d) hole

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Adverbs of frequency — ظروف التكرار

always دائمًا	usually عادة	often غالباً	sometimes أحياناً	never أبداً
100% ★★★★★	70 - 80% ★★★★☆	60 - 70% ★★★☆☆	50% ★★☆☆☆	0% ☆☆☆☆☆

Usage & Form: التكوين والاستخدام:

They're used to say how often we do things, or how often things happen.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار فعل ما، وتستخدم مع زمن المضارع البسيط.

نضع ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسى كالتالى:

Subject + **adv.** (ظرف التكرار) + inf./verb + s, es, ies

Ex:
- We **usually** play football on Mondays.
- Amr **sometimes** goes to school by bus.
- I **always** walk to school.
- Sally **never** gets up late.

لاحظ

١- يمكن استخدام sometimes أول الجملة أى قبل الفاعل.

- Sometimes, we go to the library to read books.

٢- مع (verb to be) يتم استخدام ظروف التكرار بعد (am/is/are) كالتالى:

Subject + am/is/are + **adv.** (ظرف التكرار) + adj. (صفة)

- They are **usually** late.
- Mona is **always** clever.

٣- عند السؤال عن ظروف التكرار نستخدم أداة الاستفهام (How often كم مرة) كالتالى:

How often + do > (you – we – they – اسم جمع) / does > (he – she – it – اسم مفرد) + inf. + ...?

- **A:** How often do **Akeyo and her brother** walk to school? **B:** They never walk to school.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Read and correct the underlined words:

- Students go never to school on Fridays. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (never go) لأن ظرف التكرار يسبق الفعل الرئيسى للجملة.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Asking and answering about school and timetables

السؤال والإجابة عن المدرسة وجداول الحصص

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
What's your favourite subject?	ما هى مادتك المفضلة؟	I like maths./My favourite subject is social studies.	أحب الرياضيات/مادتى المفضلة هى الدراسات الاجتماعية.
How many lessons do you have every day?	كم عدد الحصص التى لديك يوميًا؟	I have seven lessons every day.	لدى سبع حصص يوميًا.
Are you good at maths?	هل أنت جيد فى الرياضيات؟	Yes, I am.	نعم.
What time is the break?	متى تكون الفسحة؟	It's at eleven o'clock.	فى الحادية عشرة تمامًا.

online

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue: القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

Judy is asking Jana about her favourite subject.

Judy : How are you, Jana?

Jana : (1)..... .

Judy : What's your favourite subject?

Jana : (2)..... .

Judy : Are you good at science?

Jana : (3)..... .

Judy : (4).....?

Jana : Science lesson starts after break on Sunday.

Judy : (5).....?

Jana : *It finishes at twelve o'clock.*

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your day/daily life

كيف تكتب عن يومك/حياتك اليومية

- My name's (الاسم).
- I go to a preparatory school in (المكان).
- I usually get up at (الساعة).
- I often (فعل) in the morning.
- I always (فعل) after school.
- I usually (فعل) with my friends.
- We sometimes go out in the evening.
- I never (فعل) on school days.

Writing tips

A paragraph has:
- a topic sentence.
- supporting sentences.
- a concluding sentence.

يجب أن تحتوى الفقرة على:
- جملة رئيسية.
- جمل مساعدة وموضحة للموضوع.
- جملة تلخيصية (تلخص الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة).

Example

My daily life

My name's Bassem. I always have a busy day. I go to a preparatory school in Giza. I usually get up at 7 o'clock. I wash my hands and face. Then I have my breakfast. I often walk to school in the morning. I go with my friends. I have seven lessons a day. I can do many activities during the break. When I finish school, I come back home at 2:30 p.m. I always do my homework after school. I usually meet my friends. We sometimes go out in the evening. I never sleep late on school days.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Your day"

My name's .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What is your mother's job?
   a) A nurse. b) A doctor. c) A teacher. d) A cook.
2. How often do you go shopping?
   a) Often. b) Always.
   c) Sometimes. d) Never.
3. How often does your dad work at the weekend?
   a) Never. b) Always. c) Often. d) Sometimes.
4. What does your dad work with?
   a) Mobiles. b) Televisions. c) Tablets. d) Computers.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The bell ..... when a lesson starts and finishes.
   a) gets b) means c) hears d) rings
2. It's half ..... seven. It's time for school. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) past b) pass c) to d) too
3. Mostafa loves ..... art at school.
   a) eating b) playing c) doing d) buying
4. ..... school days, I get up at half past six.
   a) On b) At c) In d) Of
5. I usually ..... breakfast with my family.
   a) drink b) do c) have d) tell
6. My dad always ..... us to school.
   a) has b) chooses c) arrives d) drives
7. The road is always busy, so it ..... a long time to get there.
   a) has b) takes c) does d) makes
8. Amira ..... her homework after dinner. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
   a) does never b) never is c) is never d) never does

9. **A:** ..... do you go out for lunch? **B:** I sometimes go out for lunch.

a) How many b) How tall c) How often d) How long

10. I ..... get up late on holidays.

a) am sometimes b) ever c) every d) usually

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. They often <u>went</u> to the theatre in summer. (.....)
2. <u>Does</u> you usually get up early? (.....)
3. My aunt <u>does always</u> the shopping on Friday. (.....)
4. They play in the club every day. They <u>never</u> go to the club. (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your school day"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. We have maths ..... break.

a) in b) during c) at d) after

2. Hala ..... her make-up in the morning.

a) never does b) is never c) never is d) does never

3. ....., Toka comes to school late.

a) Never b) Always c) Sometimes d) When

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 16 - 18 | WB pages 81 & 82

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

notebook (n)	كراسة/دفتر	rules (n)	قواعد
pencil case (n)	مقلمة	uniform (n)	زى موحد
Means/Forms of transport وسائل النقل			
boat (n)	قارب	motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية
canoe (n)	زورق طويل خفيف/الكنو	snowmobile (n)	عربة الثلج
helicopter (n)	هليكوبتر (طائرة عمودية)	train (n)	قطار

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

camel (n)	جمل	road (n)	طريق
cap (n)	قبعة/كاب	shoes (n)	حذاء
football shirt (n)	قميص كرة قدم	snow (n)	جليد/ثلج
fun (n)	مرح/متعة	village (n)	قرية
office (n)	حجرة المكتب	winter (n)	الشتاء

Check Point

Choose and complete: boat – summer – camel – winter

1. The ..... is a desert animal.
2. We cross the river using a ..... .
3. It's very cold in ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do > homework	يؤدى الواجب المنزلى	say > unkind things	يقول أشياء غير طيبة
follow > school rules	يتبع القواعد المدرسية	take > a journey	يقوم برحلة سفر

Prepositions — حروف الجر

cycle to	يركب الدراجة إلى	on the other side of	على الجانب الآخر من
in a canoe	فى الزورق	on the right	على اليمين
on a snowmobile	فى عربة الثلج	on time	فى الوقت المحدد

Check Point

Choose and complete: on – do – say – to

1. I cycle ..... school every day.
2. We never ..... unkind things to our classmates.
3. Hany should go to school ..... time.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
cheap	رخيص الثمن	expensive	غالى الثمن
dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن
forget	ينسى	remember	يتذكر
kind	طيب	unkind	غير طيب
outside	خارج	inside	داخل
wear	يرتدى	take off	يخلع ملابسه

Pre-reading question:

- Is your journey to school difficult or easy?

Read the text and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 18

How do they go to school?

(1) عربية	(4) يركب الدراجة
(2) أتوبيس	(5) زورق
(3) قطار	(6) عربة الثلج

In some countries, children live a long way from their school. They do not go to school by car(1), bus(2) or train(3).

1. Every morning, children from this village in Egypt cycle(4) to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel. They can always arrive on time.

2. These children live next to Lake Bunyonyi, in Uganda. Their school is on the other side of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a canoe(5). The canoe takes the children to school and back home again every day.

3. This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of snow. The children travel to school on a snowmobile(6)!

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Uganda /juːˈgændə/ village /vɪlɪdʒ/ cycle /saɪkəl/
canoe /kənuː/ snowmobile/snoʊməbiːl/

Post-reading question:

- Mention three ways children use to go to school.

Pre-listening question:

- How do you go to school?

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 3. *SB page 18*

Narrator 2 : 1

Narrator Every morning, children from this village in Egypt cycle to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel.

Boy When the roads are busy, the bus is slow but the bike is quick!

(1) زورق

(2) عربة ثلج

Narrator 2 : 2

Narrator These children live next to Lake Bunyonyi in Uganda. Their school is on the other side of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a canoe(1). The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day.

Boy Sometimes, when it rains a lot, the water's dangerous and we can't arrive at school on time.

Narrator 2 : 3

Narrator This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of snow. The children travel to school on a snowmobile(2)!

Boy It's cold, but it's fast–and fun!

Post-listening questions:

1. If you were a student in the USA, how would you find travelling to school on a snowmobile?
2. When the roads are busy, which is faster, a bus or a bike?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People travel on a ..... when there is snow. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) foot b) bike c) canoe d) snowmobile
2. Camels are very ..... . They can carry 200 kilos of bags. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) weak b) low c) strong d) poor
3. My aunt is very ..... . She always gives me big presents. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) sad b) kind c) unkind d) poor
4. Some children in Egypt ..... to school. Bikes are fantastic. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) cycle b) play c) meet d) drive
5. The canoe ..... children to school and home again every day. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   a) drives b) rides c) takes d) cycles
6. Cars, buses, planes and trains are means of ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) report b) airport c) port d) transport
7. We should ..... our school uniform during the school day.
   a) forget b) wear c) help d) say
8. Students should ..... their homework every day.
   a) do b) follow c) put d) say
9. Some students go to school ..... a canoe. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) by b) on c) in d) at
10. The children in the USA ..... to school on a snowmobile. WB
    a) cycle b) take c) ride d) travel
11. My mother gave me a red ..... to put my pens in.
    a) ruler b) pencil case c) notebook d) timetable
12. We always ..... school rules. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
    a) finish b) fill c) fail d) follow
13. He doesn't want to help his friends. He is ..... .
    a) clever b) busy c) unkind d) kind

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Riding bikes is a/an ..... way to travel.
   a) kind b) unkind c) unhealthy d) healthy
2. We arrived ..... Luxor two days ago.
   a) in b) at c) on d) with
3. They are polite. They never ..... unkind things to their friends. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) say b) talk c) laugh d) listen
4. The opposit of "expensive" is "..... ".
   a) unhealthy b) busy c) cheap d) unkind
5. He lives in a small ..... away from the city.
   a) village b) country c) lake d) snow
6. A ..... takes people from one side of a lake to another. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) bike b) canoe c) snowmobile d) car
7. My school is ..... the other side of the lake.
   a) from b) in c) at d) on
8. A canoe is a kind of a ..... that goes on water. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) taxi b) snowmobile c) boat d) tram
9. I ..... on my school uniform at 7 a.m. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) have b) talk c) take d) put
10. When the roads are ..... , the bus is slow.
    a) strong b) expensive c) busy d) cheap
11. They usually ..... to school. They go on foot.
    a) walk b) cycle c) drive d) fly
12. The opposite of the word "safe" is "..... ". القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
    a) false b) different c) dangerous d) expensive
13. School ..... should be followed. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
    a) roles b) rulers c) rolls d) rules

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Possessive 's / s' — الملكية ('s / s')

تستخدم ('s)/('s) للتعبير عن ملكية شخص/أشخاص لشىء ما:

نستخدم ('s) الملكية بعد الاسم المفرد غير المنتهى بـ (s)

's

- It's Adel's book.
- That's my friend's car.

نستخدم ('s) الملكية بعد الاسم الجمع الذى ليس آخره حرف (s) (جمع غير منتظم).

- That is not the children's room.

نستخدم (') مع الاسم الجمع المنتظم المنتهى بحرف (s)

s'

- That's the teachers' room.
- This is a girls' school.

يمكن استخدام (') مع الاسم المفرد المنتهى بحرف (s).

- It's Lamees' dress.

لاحظ

١- لا تستخدم ('s) مع الجماد.

- I repaired my car door.

٢- عند امتلاك شخصين أو أكثر لشىء ما، نضع ('s) على الاسم الأخير فقط:

- I know whose ruler this is. It has **Dalia and Azza's** names on it.

٣- عند إضافة ('s) لبعض الوظائف تتحول إلى أماكن:

baker's المخبز/chemist's الصيدلية/butcher's محل الجزارة

٤- عند السؤال عن الملكية نستخدم (ملك من/لمن Whose) كالتالى:

Whose + (object الشىء) + is/are ...?

A: Whose shoes are these? **B:** They are Ali's shoes.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. My father repaired the laptop's battery. (.....)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (laptop battery) لأنه جماد فلا يتم إضافة ('s).
2. Who's book is that? (.....)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (Whose) لأنها تسأل عن الملكية.
3. This is Ayas' car. (.....)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (Aya's) لأن Aya اسم مفرد غير منتهٍ بـ s.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This is ..... phone. It's new. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) Ali b) Alis c) Ali's d) Alis'
2. Mr. Samy is in the ..... room. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
   a) teachers' b) teacher's c) teachers d) teacher
3. This is ..... bag. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Ahmeds b) Ahmed's c) Ahmeds' d) Ahmed
4. Those are my ..... books.
   a) children b) childrens' c) children's d) children'
5. Her father is called Wael and her ..... name is Samar.
   a) mother b) mothers c) mother's d) mothers'
6. **A:** ..... dresses are these? **B:** They are Sara's. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) Who's b) Whose c) Who d) What
7. This car belongs to Ghada. It's ..... car.
   a) Ghada's b) Ghadas' c) Ghadas d) Ghada'
8. All students have their books. All the ..... books are on the table.
   a) student's b) students' c) students d) student
9. ..... English class starts at ten o'clock.
   a) Thursday b) Thursday's c) Thursdays d) Thursdays's
10. Ali broke the ..... leg yesterday.
    a) table b) table's c) tables' d) tables

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. These are my sister shoes. She likes them. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. My friend name is Rawda. (.....) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
3. My sister goes to a girl's school. (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
4. The childrens' clothes are in that bag. (.....) دمياط ٢٠٢٣
5. These are the boys football shirts. They want them. (.....) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
6. Nada's and Yara school is very big. (.....)

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This is ..... drum. He likes music.
   a) Hani' b) Hanis c) Hani's d) Hanis'
2. Hala has got red hair. ..... hair is very long.
   a) Halas b) Hala's c) Halas' d) Hala
3. My father went to the mechanic to fix the ..... door.
   a) cars' b) car's c) car is d) car
4. I had to wait in the ..... room till my father finished his work in the hospital. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٠
   a) doctor b) doctor's c) doctors' d) doctors
5. That is not my ball. It is the ..... ball. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) childrens' b) childrens's c) children d) children's
6. We buy bread at the ..... .
   a) baker's b) bakers c) bakers's d) baker
7. ..... family is from Tanta. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) Sara b) Sara's c) Saras' d) Saras
8. **A:** ..... cap is it? **B:** It's mine.
   a) What b) Whose c) When d) Who's
9. My mum and dad sleep here. This is my ..... room.
   a) parents' b) parent's c) parents d) parent
10. Chess is my ..... favourite game. It's his hobby.
    a) cousin's b) cousins c) cousin d) cousins'

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. We found Mona bag. (.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
2. The girl's names are Hanen and Marwa. (.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
3. **A:** Can you see Kamal's and Amir classroom?
   B: It is on the right. (.....) WB
4. My uncles favourite sport is basketball. (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٠
5. My cousin's house is over there. I love them. (.....)
6. We can buy meat at the butcher. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about your journey to school

كيفية الكتابة عن رحلتك إلى المدرسة

- My name's (الاسم).
- I live in (المكان).
- I go to school with (الشخص/الأشخاص).
- My school is (near/ far from) my house.
- I travel to school by (الوسيلة).

Writing tips

Before writing, you need to think of ideas relevant to the topic.

- قبل البدء فى الكتابة، يجب أن تبحث عن أفكار مرتبطة بالموضوع.

Example

My school journey

My name's Marwa. In some countries, children live a long way from their school. They do not go to school by car, bus or train. I live in Luxor. I go to school with my friends. I'm in preparatory one at school. My school is far from my house, so we never walk to school. We travel to school by ferry. It takes about an hour to arrive at school. The ferry is very nice. We cross the river to get there. It's not an easy journey. The ferry takes us to school and home again every day. I get home at three o'clock. I like my journey to school.

2. How to write about your weekend

كيفية الكتابة عن عطلتك الأسبوعية

- At the weekend, I go to (المكان).
- We go there by (وسيلة المواصلات).
- We always have a good time.
- I go with (الأشخاص).
- We go back home (الوقت).

Example

My weekend

My name's Tamer. I live in Cairo with my family. At the weekend, I go to my grandfather's farm. It's in Giza. I go there with my family. We usually go in my father's car. I like the farm. I help my grandfather plant apples. My brother likes farm animals. He watches them and gives them water. My sister helps my grandmother make lunch. My parents go for a walk to enjoy the green trees there. We always have a good time. It's a lot of fun.

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

School starts at half past seven every day. Nabil lives ***near*** his school, so he goes there on foot. He is kind and friendly. He works hard to pass the exams every year. He likes reading, so he goes to the school library twice a week. He hopes to be a doctor because he is good at maths, science and English. He likes meeting clever people, but he doesn't like meeting bad people. He also likes visiting new places. His favourite foods are fish, meat and rice. He helps his mother at home. His favourite sport is football.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
2. How often does Nabil go to the school library? .....
3. What kind of books do you think Nabil likes to read? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Nabil likes meeting ..... people.
   a) bad b) clever c) unkind d) unhappy
5. The underlined pronoun "His" refers to ..... .
   a) food b) Nabil's father c) Nabil d) sport
6. The opposite of the word "***near***" is ..... .
   a) far b) close c) nearby d) crowded

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My school ..... is a white shirt and blue pants. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
   a) rule b) uniform c) form d) picture
2. The train left Cairo at 7 o'clock and soon we ..... in Giza.
   a) walked b) arrived c) got d) went
3. At school, we have many ..... to follow.
   a) subjects b) sports c) rules d) rooms
4. We usually cycle ..... school. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) to b) at c) in d) on
5. There is a nice park ..... the other side of the road.
   a) in b) with c) on d) to
6. It's ..... to travel on a snowmobile. I like it very much.
   a) fun b) busy c) unkind d) unhealthy

7. I like to ..... to school, it's healthier and costs no money.

a) swim b) drive c) cycle d) fly

8. Room "1" is the ..... office. His name is Mr Ibrahim. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

a) teachers b) teachers' c) teacher d) teacher's

9. ..... brother is a good tennis player.

a) Waleed b) Waleed' c) Waleed's d) Waleeds

10. We buy medicine at the ..... .

a) chemist's b) chemists' c) chemists d) chemist

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. **A:** Who bag is this? **B:** It's Hadeer's. (.....)
2. Yesterday match was boring. (.....)
3. This is Sandy laptop. (.....)
4. This is a shop for mens clothes. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How children go to school and why"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Read and correct the underlined words: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What is today date, Mazin? (.....)
2. The chemist is the place where I buy medicine. (.....)
3. My grandparents' farm is big. He bought it 10 years ago. (.....)

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions

التعريفات

an email	رسالة بريد إلكترونى	it is a simple(1) message sent through(2) the internet
Arabic	اللغة العربية	it is the language of Arab countries(3)
art	الرسم	we paint and draw in this lesson
computer studies	دراسات الحاسب	we use a mouse in this lesson
English	اللغة الإنجليزية	it is the language(4) of England
French	اللغة الفرنسية	it is the language of France
maths	الرياضيات	we learn about numbers in this lesson

(1) بسيط .....

(2) عبر/خلال .....

(3) الدول العربية .....

(4) لغة

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
friendly	ودود	kind	طيب
true	صحيح	correct/right	صحيح

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
friend (n)	صديق	-ly		تحول الاسم لصفة		friendly (adj)	ودود

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-		تعطى عكس المعنى		friendly (adj)	ودود	unfriendly (adj)	غير ودود

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
quite	إلى حد ما	quiet	هادئ
Arabic	اللغة العربية	Arab	عربى (الجنسية)

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهه فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- What is your favourite subject?

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 1. *SB page 19*

Leila There's the bell!

Aya What subject have we got next?

Leila Let's look at the timetable. We've got computer studies next, in the hall. Hooray!

Aya Computer studies ... I'm not very good at computer studies!

Leila I love it! It's my favourite! What's your favourite subject, Aya?

Aya I like science and languages[1].

Leila Are you good at languages?

Aya I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French[2].

Leila Who's our English teacher this year?

Aya It's Mrs. Amal.

Leila Oh good. She's really friendly. When have we got English?

Aya It's after break.

Leila What time is break?

Aya It's from quarter past ten to half past ten. Let's meet in the playground, and go to the library.

Leila OK!

(1) اللغات

(2) اللغة الفرنسية

Post-listening questions:

1. How do you think Aya can improve her English?
2. How is Mrs. Amal?

Pre-reading question:

- What do you do after school?

Read about Amira. Write the questions a–c in the correct places.

SB page 20

A Day in My Life!

Amira is from Egypt.

Q : 1. **How old are you, and where are you from?**

A : I'm twelve years old, and I'm from Hurghada.

Q : 2. **What subjects do you like?**

A : This year, I'm in preparatory 1 at school. My favourite subjects are science, computer studies and maths. We have science and maths in the first lesson every day, but we only have computer studies on Wednesday. I like music, too, but I'm not very good at it!

Q : 3. **What do you usually do after school?**

A : I sometimes read or watch TV. I always do my homework before I have dinner. After dinner, I usually have a shower and read my book in bed. What time do you wake up and go to bed?

Post-reading question:

- How often does Amira have computer studies?

Read the email and write the missing sentences a–c in the right places.

WB page 84

Hi Nagwa,

How are you? You want to know what my parents do at the weekend. ***My father works with computers***. My mother is a teacher. My dad never works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework! We often go shopping. When it is not very hot, we usually go to the park. ***My brother always plays football when we go there!*** He is very good at football. What about you? ***What do you do at the weekend?***

Best wishes

Nesma

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** What is your ..... subject? **B:** It's English. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) true b) friend c) favourite d) correct
2. ..... is the main language of Arab people. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
   a) French b) Spanish c) English d) Arabic
3. I like my teachers. They're very ..... .
   a) bad b) unkind c) friendly d) sad
4. I usually ..... a shower after school.
   a) go b) do c) have d) make
5. My mother ..... up early to make our breakfast. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) puts b) comes c) forgets d) wakes
6. Which holiday ..... can people do in Egypt? المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) weeks b) views c) activities d) souvenirs
7. I go to school. I'm in ..... one.
   a) false b) preparatory c) right d) kind
8. A/An ..... is a simple message sent through the internet.
   a) email b) art c) letter d) computer
9. Arabic, English and French are all ..... . الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
   a) meals b) languages c) hobbies d) timetables
10. My mother always ..... shopping on Sundays.
    a) arrives b) gets c) makes d) goes
11. Breakfast, lunch and ..... are daily meals. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
    a) dinner b) language c) petrol d) reading
12. My teacher asked us to ..... a project about computers.
    a) do b) make c) have d) come
13. When I ..... home from school, I have something to eat.
    a) take b) give c) have d) come

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about school — السؤال والإجابة عن الدراسة

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
How do you travel to school?	كيف تسافر إلى المدرسة؟	I travel to school by bus.	أسافر إلى المدرسة بالأتوبيس.
How long does it take?	كم تستغرق الرحلة؟	About ten minutes.	حوالى ١٠ دقائق.
Who is our teacher of English this year?	من هو مدرسنا فى اللغة الإنجليزية هذا العام؟	Mr Waleed Ali.	الأستاذ وليد على.
When have we got English?	متى موعد حصة اللغة الإنجليزية؟	It's after break.	إنها بعد الفسحة.
What time is break?	متى تكون الفسحة؟	It's at quarter past ten.	فى العاشرة والربع.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue: الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

Ahmed is asking Mustafa about his favourite subject.

Ahmed : Hi, Mustafa. Can I ask you a few questions about your school?

Mustafa: (1).....

Ahmed : What is your favourite subject?

Mustafa: (2).....

Ahmed : (3).....?

Mustafa: Because English is an interesting subject.

Ahmed : (4).....?

Mustafa: Mr. Omar is my English teacher this year.

Ahmed : How often do you study it?

Mustafa: (5).....

1 Complete the following dialogue:

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

Salma is asking Amany about school.

Salma : Do you mind if I ask you some questions about school?

Amany : (1)..... ..

Salma : When do you usually wake up on school days?

Amany : (2)..... .

Salma : (3)..... ?

Amany : I walk to school because it's very close to my house.

Salma : (4).....?

Amany : My favourite school subject is English.

Salma : Is there a library in your school?

Amany : (5)..... I go there daily.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** What ..... are you good at, Rana? **B:** English and Italian.
   a) hobbies b) sports c) foods d) languages
2. We always ..... dinner at nine in the evening.
   a) have b) do c) take d) give
3. My best friend lives ..... Giza.
   a) on b) in c) from d) of
4. We paint and draw in ..... lessons.
   a) Arabic b) science c) maths d) art
5. I like my friend Waleed because he is ..... .
   a) ugly b) bad c) friendly d) unfriendly
6. I get up at seven, then I ..... my clothes.
   a) look at b) put on c) wake up d) go to
7. Before I go to bed, I take my favourite book and ..... in bed.
   a) read b) come c) go d) have

8. My father asks me not to close the ..... door hard.

a) cars' b) car's c) car is d) car

9. My father always ..... to work by bus.

a) is going b) going c) goes d) go

10. **A:** ..... dress is this? **B:** It's mine.

a) Which b) Whose c) When d) What

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. **A:** How many do you study English? **B:** Every day. (.....)
2. What languages are you good for? (.....)
3. My brother's birthday is on Monday. They are twins. (.....)
4. Aya never walk to school. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

"A typical day in your life"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. My brother always plays football ..... we go to the park.

a) when b) why c) which d) what

2. I don't like science, but I'm ..... good at it.

a) quite b) not c) never d) hardly

3. Students ..... many activities to do at school.

a) stay b) make c) do d) have

Review on Unit 2

Vocabulary

maths	الرياضيات
motorbike	دراجة بخارية
break	فسحة/راحة
notebook	كراسة/دفتر
canoe	زورق طويل خفيف/الكنو
computer studies	دراسات الحاسب
daily life	الحياة اليومية
playground	ملعب
drama	الدراما (أدب المسرحيات)
religion	الدين
English	اللغة الإنجليزية
rules	قواعد
favourite subject	مادة مفضلة
French	اللغة الفرنسية
snowmobile	عربة الثلج
social studies	الدراسات الاجتماعية
timetable	جدول الحصص
home economics	الاقتصاد المنزلى
typical	نموذجى/مثالى
languages	لغات
uniform	زى موحد
Whose ...?	لمن/ملك من ...؟

Language

1 Adverbs of frequency: ظروف التكرار:

always دائمًا/ usually عادة/ often غالبًا/ sometimes أحيانًا/ never أبدًا

نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار فعل ما، وتستخدم مع زمن المضارع البسيط.

نضع ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسى كالتالى:

- Subject + **adv.** (ظرف التكرار) + inf./verb + s, es, ies

يتم استخدام ظروف التكرار بعد (am/is/are) مع (verb to be) كالتالى:

- Subject + am/is/are + **adv.** (ظرف التكرار) + adj. (صفة)

2 ('s): الملكية ('s / s')

- It's **Adel**'s book.
- That is not the **children**'s notebook.

3 (s'):

- That's **the teachers'** room.
- It's **Lamees'** dress.

لا تستخدم ('s) مع الجماد

- I repaired my car door.

عند السؤال عن الملكية نستخدم (Whose) ملك من/لمن

A: Whose shoes are these?

B: They are Ali's shoes.

Skills

Asking and answering about school and timetables:

السؤال والإجابة عن المدرسة وجداول الحصص:

A: What's your favourite subject?

ما هى مادتك المفضلة؟

B: I like maths./

B: My favourite subject is social studies.

أحب الرياضيات/مادتى المفضلة هى الدراسات الاجتماعية.

A: How many lessons do you have every day?

كم عدد الحصص التى لديك كل يوم؟

B: I have seven lessons every day.

لدى سبع حصص يوميًا.

A: What time is break?

متى تكون الفسحة؟

B: It's at eleven o'clock.

فى الحادية عشرة تمامًا.

A: Who is our teacher of English this year?

من هو مدرسنا فى اللغة الإنجليزية هذا العام؟

B: Mr Mohamed Mesbah.

الأستاذ محمد مصباح.

A: How do you travel to school?

كيف تسافر للمدرسة؟

B: I travel to school by bus.

أسافر للمدرسة بالأتوبيس.

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 2

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. How is the weather in the USA in winter?

a) Rainy. b) Sunny. c) Windy. d) Snowy.

2. How do the children go to school there?

a) By bus. b) By car.

c) In a canoe. d) On a snowmobile.

3. How is their journey to school?

a) Fast. b) Fun.

c) Both a & b. d) Neither a nor b.

4. How is the weather when they go to school?

a) Hot. b) Cold. c) Wet. d) Cool.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

Dina is asking Jana about her typical day.

Dina : When do you get up?

Jana : (1).....

Dina : (2).....?

Jana : I have breakfast at six thirty.

Dina : (3).....?

Jana : I go to school at eight o'clock.

Dina : What time do you come home from school?

Jana : (4).....

Dina : Do you always do your homework after lunch?

Jana : (5).....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

My name is Mustafa. I'm in preparatory one at Tanta Prep School. When I was at primary school, I walked there every day as it was not far from my house. It took me only 10 minutes to get there. This year, my school is far from my house. I get up early every day and take a bus. The streets are very busy, so it takes me a long time to go and **come back**. My dad is friendly, he bought me a bike. It is wonderful. I sometimes cycle to school. Bikes are a healthy way to travel.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text?

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to?

.....

3. Why do you think Mustafa cycles to school?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Mustafa is at Tanta Prep School for ..... year(s).
   a) one b) two c) three d) four
5. The opposite of "**come back**" is ..... .
   a) go b) take out c) come to d) get up
6. Mustafa goes to his school by ..... .
   a) taxi b) car c) train d) bus

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Girls learn how to cook in the ..... . دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) Arabic b) science
   c) maths d) home economics
2. My journey to school ..... about 30 minutes.
   a) talks b) wakes c) takes d) makes
3. **A:** What time is it? **B:** It's half ..... twelve. المنوفية ٢٠٢٠
   a) on b) in c) to d) past
4. The ..... rings at the beginning and the end of the lessons.
   a) ball b) pin c) bin d) bell

5. I usually eat cheese and eggs ..... breakfast.
a) with b) to c) by d) for

6. Swimming is my ..... hobby. I like it. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) expensive b) favourite c) bad d) radio

7. I like English and French. I'm good at ..... .
a) sports b) languages c) objects d) subjects

8. We ..... go to school on Fridays. It's a holiday. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
a) often b) sometimes c) always d) never

9. Sandy is one of ..... friends.
a) Leila's b) Leilas' c) Leilas d) Leila

10. My brother ..... a clever tennis player. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢
a) always b) is always c) always is d) never

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The mall usually is crowded at the weekend. (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
2. How often are you travel by plane? (.....)
3. That beautiful blouse is my mothers. (.....)
4. Nour grows always plants in their garden. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"School rules"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Monthly Models on Units 1&2

هذه النماذج ستساعدك التدرب على الاختبارات الشهرية.

October Model 1

10

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Samir is asking Yehia about his favourite sport.

Samir: Good morning.

Yehia : Good morning. Can I ask you some more questions?

Samir: (1)..... .

Yehia : Do you have any hobbies?

Samir: (2)..... .

Yehia : (3).....?

Samir: My favourite sport is football.

Yehia : (4).....?

Samir: I play it on Fridays.

Yehia : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Your sister is your parents' ..... .
   a) son b) uncle c) aunt d) daughter
2. My uncle travels a lot. He has a lot of ..... .
   a) notebooks b) objects c) adventures d) subjects
3. Athletes work hard to ..... their studies, work and their families.
   a) practice b) balance c) arrive d) volunteer
4. We arrived at Luxor Airport at quarter ..... six.
   a) past b) paste c) post d) pasta
5. I can hear the ..... . It's time for the English lesson.
   a) bell b) bill c) hall d) ball

6. Children in Uganda cross the lake in a ..... .

a) bus b) taxi c) canoe d) snowmobile

7. I usually ..... my homework after school.

a) have b) make c) take d) do

8. What time does school ..... every day?

a) starting b) start c) starts d) started

9. Tell ..... about your family.

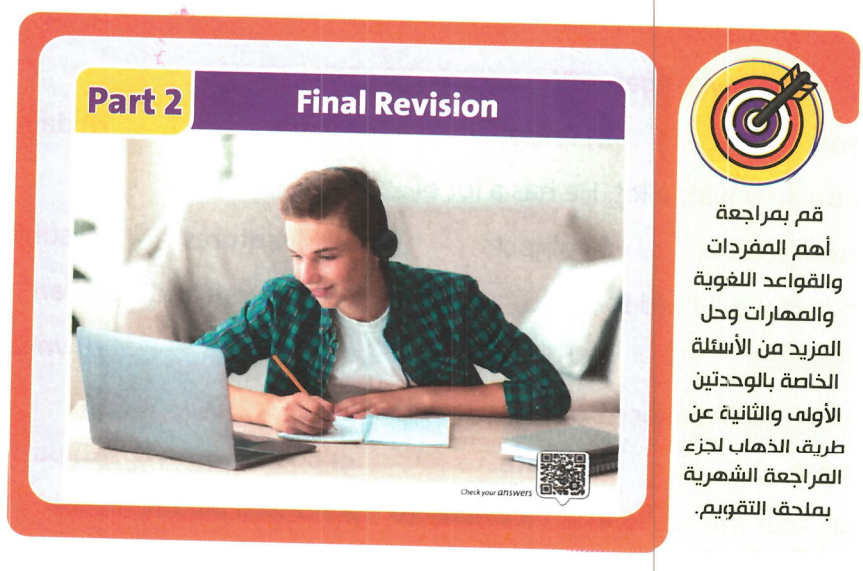
a) mine b) my c) me d) I

10. It's ..... pencil case.

a) Ali b) Ali's c) Alis d) Alis'

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I usually plays basketball on Sundays. (.....)
2. She don't like playing tennis. (.....)
3. He helps always his father with his work. (.....)
4. **A:** Who's pencil is yours? **B:** The red one. (.....)
5. **A:** How many do you walk to school? **B:** Always. (.....)



قم بمراجعة أهم المفردات والقواعد اللغوية والمهارات وحل المزيد من الأسئلة الخاصة بالوحدتين الأولى والثانية عن طريق الذهاب لجزء المراجعة الشهرية بملحق التقويم.

October Model 2

7.5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... is a game for two people.
   a) Football b) Handball c) Chess d) Volleyball
2. Basmala works hard to ..... her dreams.
   a) sleep b) achieve c) have d) take
3. When her parents died in an accident, she became a/an ..... .
   a) orphan b) kind c) age d) baby
4. As a gymnast, Ola ..... for 5 or 6 hours daily to be fit.
   a) teaches b) trains c) studies d) swims
5. I learnt how to cook in the ..... lessons.
   a) computer studies b) social studies c) home economics d) maths
6. I always borrow books from the school ..... .
   a) lab b) library c) bookshop d) hall
7. People in Egypt are very ..... . Many tourists like them.
   a) friendly b) unfriendly c) scary d) boring
8. Girls always ..... to pop music.
   a) listening b) are listening c) listens d) listen
9. ..... Nabil's sister play handball?
   a) Does b) Do c) Is d) Are
10. Fouad is one of ..... friends.
    a) Samy's b) Samys' c) Samys d) Samy

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. That pen is me and this is yours. (.....)
2. Where's the teachers room, please? (.....)
3. Who pencil case is this? (.....)
4. That's my father car. (.....)
5. Soliman always walks to school. It's too far. (.....)

October Model 3

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hatem and Hazem are talking about the school day.

Hatem : What's your favourite subject, Hazem?

Hazem : (1)..... .

Hatem : (2).....?

Hazem : Mr Samir is our English teacher this year.

Hatem : He's a good teacher. (3).....?

Hazem : We have English today after break. Then we have maths.

Hatem : Good, I like maths. Are you good at maths?

Hazem : (4)..... . I like maths.

Hatem : What time is the break?

Hazem : (5)..... .

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

"Heidi" is the story of an ***orphan*** girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains and he has lots of goats. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread and cheese.

Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and her friend Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy.

But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats. Heidi has lots of adventures in the city.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage mainly about?

.....

2. What do you think of Heidi's life?

.....

3. Where does Heidi sleep?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Heidi's grandfather has lots of ..... .

a) dogs
b) cats
c) goats
d) lions

5. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to ..... .

a) Peter
b) Heidi's grandfather
c) Heidi's mother
d) Heidi's cousin

6. The underlined word "***orphan***" means someone who has no ..... .

a) money
b) friends
c) parents
d) father or mother

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. That car belongs to my uncle. It's him. (.....)
2. We often goes shopping at the weekend. (.....)
3. He always swims. He can't swim. (.....)
4. This is me phone. It's new. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about Eighty (80) words on:

"A day in your school"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 3

Different people

Objectives of the unit

Reading	A description of a sports star; a blog post; Alice's Adventures in Wonderland
Writing	A blog post about a friend
Listening	Descriptions of people
Speaking	Describing people; talking about likes and dislikes
Language	have / has got; can / can't
Life Skills	Respect for diversity; resilience

Tapescripts

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 22-25 | WB pages 86 & 87

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

famous (adj)	مشهور	look (ed) like	يشبه
footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم	moustache (n)	شارب
beard (n)	لحية	goal (n)	هدف
big smile	ابتسامة كبيرة	runner (n)	عداء/متسابق جرى
Europe (n)	أوروبا	sports star (n)	نجم رياضى
fan (n)	معجب/مشجع	team (n)	فريق
Hair types أنواع الشعر			
curly hair	شعر مجعد	straight hair	شعر مستقيم
dark hair	شعر داكن	blond hair	شعر أشقر
short hair	شعر قصير	long hair	شعر طويل
Sports ألعاب رياضية			
basketball (n)	كرة السلة	squash (n)	الإسكواش
running (n)	الجرى	volleyball (n)	الكرة الطائرة

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

carry (y/ied) (v)	يحمل	normal (adj)	عادى/طبيعى
description (n)	وصف	person (n)	شخص
insect (n)	حشرة	present (n)	هدية
Italian (n/adj)	اللغة الإيطالية/إيطالى	the Cairo Tower (n)	برج القاهرة
glasses (n)	نظارة/نظارات	tortoise (n)	سلحفاة

Check Point

Choose and complete: tiger – tortoise – footballer – like

1. Mohamed Salah is an amazing ..... .
2. What does your best friend look .....?
3. The ..... is a very slow animal.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

jump > high	يقفز عاليًا		score > a goal	يحرز/يسجل هدفًا	
play > video games	يلعب ألعاب الفيديو		take > a holiday	يأخذ إجازة	
talk to > fans	يتكلم مع المعجبين		give > money	يعطى (يتبرع) بالمال	

Prepositions — حروف الجر

easy for	سهل لـ	play for	يلعب لصالح
have time for	لدية وقت لـ	short for a footballer	قصير بالنسبة للاعب كرة القدم
go at + السرعة	تسير بسرعة	talk to	يتكلم مع/إلى
pick (ed) up	يلتقط	travel around	يسافر حول

Check Point

Choose and complete: for – around – score

1. Mohamed Salah can ..... a lot of goals.
2. Cristiano Ronaldo plays ..... Al Nasr Football Club in the KSA.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
build	يبنى	built	built	give	يعطى	gave	given
fly	يطير	flew	flown	win	يفوز/يكسب	won	won

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
fast	سريع	slow	بطىء
poor	فقير	rich	غنى
strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف
tall	طويل	short	قصير

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 tall (طويل) (طول رأسى)

- My brother is tall.

long (طويل) (طول أفقى)

- She's got long hair.

2 How to describe someone's hair:

كيفية وصف شعر شخص ما:

01 size	02 colour	03 pattern	04 noun
long short	dark black	curly straight	hair

- Mohamed Salah has got long, dark, curly **hair.**

3 What + do/does + الفاعل + look like?

للسؤال عن الملامح نستخدم

- What does your father look like?
- He's got short, dark hair.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
famous	مشهور	well-known	معروف جيداً
strong	قوى	powerful	قوى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة	
football (n) كرة قدم	-er	تحويل الاسم إلى اسم فاعل	footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word الكلمة		The new word الكلمة الجديدة	
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	funny (adj)	مضحك	unfunny (adj)	غير مضحك

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
hair	شعر	hear	يسمع
fans	معجبون	fins	زعانف السمكة
beard	لحية	bread	خبز

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

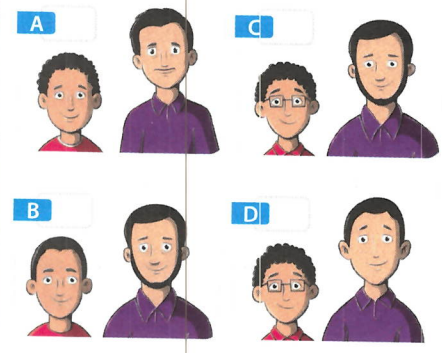
B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- What does your father look like?

Listen. Tick (✓) the picture of Samir. *SB page 23*



Mazin There's my friend, Samir.

Mum I don't know Samir. What does he look like (1)?

Mazin He's got short, dark hair (2).

Mum Oh, I think I can see him. Has he got glasses (3)?

Mazin No, he hasn't. His dad's with him.

Mum Has Samir's dad got a beard (4)?

Mazin Yes, he has.

Mum Oh, yes. I can see Samir now.

(1) يشبه (2) شعر غامق قصير

(3) نظارة (4) لحية

Note: تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

beard /bɪəʳd/

Post-listening question:

- Do you think that Mazin's mother has met Samir before? How do you know?

Complete the descriptions with these words: *WB page 86*

The woman in the first picture has got long straight **hair** and **glasses**. The man in the second picture has got **short curly** dark hair and a **moustache**. The second woman has got short **blond** hair. The second man has got short dark **hair** and a **beard**.

Pre-reading question:

- What do you know about Mohamed Salah?

Look at the photo. What do you know about this sports star? *SB page 24*

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star(1). He plays football for a very good team(2) in Europe(3). He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a fast runner(4).

Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile(5). He is quite short(6) for a footballer(7). He is 1.75 metres tall(8). In this photo, Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly hair and a beard.

He is a kind(9) person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt.
He also gives money to poor(10) people. He is very friendly(11) and he always talks to his fans.

He has not got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Europe /ˈjʊərəp/
score /skɔːʳ/

(1) نجم رياضى	(2) فريق	(3) أوروبا
(4) عداء سريع	(5) ابتسامة كبيرة	(6) قصير إلى حد ما
(7) لاعب كرة قدم	(8) طويل	(9) عطوف
(10) فقير	(11) ودود	

Post-reading questions:

1. Mohamed Salah is a kind person. Explain.
2. Do you think Mohamed Salah is a role model? Why?

Pre-listening question:

- Which sport would you like to practise?

Listen and circle the correct words. *SB page 25*

My favourite sports star is Doaa Elghobashy. She plays volleyball for Egypt. She's very tall. She's 180 centimetres tall. She's strong and she's fast. She can jump very high! She's friendly. She always has a big smile.

Complete the sentences with can or can't. *WB page 87*

Mohamed Salah **can** score lots of goals and he **can** run very fast. He lives in England. He **can** speak English, of course. He lived in Italy for two years, so he **can** speak Italian, too! He is famous, so he **can't** have a normal life. If he goes outside, many people want to talk to him. He is very busy. He **can't** take many holidays.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

England /ˈɪŋgləɪnd/ famous /feɪməs/ Italian /ɪtæliən/

Post-reading question:

- How many languages can Mohamed Salah speak?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** Has your sister got short hair? **B:** No, she has got ..... hair. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) long b) slow c) fast d) kind
2. Her hair is ..... . It is not straight. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) blond b) short c) curly d) long
3. I have got short, dark, curly ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) hear b) hair c) ear d) her
4. I can't see well, so I need ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) classes b) glasses c) shoes d) books
5. Mohamed Salah has a big ..... .
   a) smell b) smile c) mile d) small
6. My sister likes writing stories. She wants to be a famous ..... .
   a) writer b) gymnast c) nurse d) singer
7. Mohammed Salah is quite short ..... a footballer.
   a) on b) to c) at d) for
8. He's Maher's brother. He looks ..... him.
   a) like b) by c) with d) near
9. She has got ..... hair. It's very long.
   a) street b) straight c) funny d) hard
10. Mohamed Salah is very ..... . He always talks to his fans.
    a) funny b) rich c) friendly d) poor
11. My cousin lives in Italy, but he can't ..... Italian well.
    a) speak b) talk c) tell d) watch
12. I had many ..... on my birthday.
    a) presents b) films c) holidays d) features
13. Mohamed Salah is an Egyptian ..... star. He is very famous. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
    a) sport b) sporty c) sports d) sport's

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Salah can ..... a lot of goals. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) break b) save c) find d) score
2. My grandfather has got a big ..... on his mouth. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
   a) hair b) beard c) ear d) moustache
3. My hair is ..... . It isn't straight. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) blond b) curly c) short d) long
4. Mohammed Salah is friendly and always talks to his ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) pans b) pins c) vans d) fans
5. A ..... is a group of people who play a sport together. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) star b) goal c) footballer d) team
6. One of my hobbies is ..... video games.
   a) playing b) scoring c) giving d) writing
7. Sara always reads ..... stories. They make her laugh.
   a) sad b) unkind c) funny d) bad
8. Mohamed Salah is a famous sports ..... around the world.
   a) moon b) sky c) high d) star
9. Speaking many languages isn't easy ..... most people.
   a) with b) in c) at d) for
10. He was the first. He is really a fast ..... .
    a) worker b) teacher c) runner d) writer
11. He has got dark hair and a ..... . قنا ٢٠٢٣
    a) beard b) heard c) bird d) tired
12. My grandfather is kind. He helps ..... people.
    a) famous b) strong c) rich d) poor
13. My father doesn't have much time ..... playing a sport.
    a) at b) for c) on d) to

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

1 Have/Has got

يملك/لديه/عنده

Form التكوين

I You We They (اسم جمع)	He She It (اسم مفرد)
> have(n't) got	> has(n't) got .....
• I have got short, curly hair.	• Mazin has got a bike.
• They haven't got curly hair.	• My mother hasn't got a car.

لاحظ

يمكن أن نستخدم ظروف التكرار بعد (have/has):

• Mohamed Salah has **usually** got a big smile.

Yes/No questions

Question السؤال

Have	I / you / we / they / (اسم جمع)	> got ...?
A: Have you got curly hair?		
B: Yes, I have. / **B:** No, I haven't.		

Has	he / she / it / (اسم مفرد)	> got ...?
A: Has Mazin got a bike?		
B: Yes, he has. / **B:** No, he hasn't.		

Wh-questions

Question word (أداة الاستفهام) + has/have + subj. (الفاعل) + got ...?

A: How many brothers have you got? **B:** I have got three brothers.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال
تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Read and correct the underlined words:

1 She's get blond hair. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (got) لوجود 's وهى اختصار has.

2 **A:** Have you got glasses? **B:** No, I have. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (haven't) لوجود No الدالة على النفى.

2 Can / Can't — يستطيع / لا يستطيع

Form & Usage: التكوين والاستخدام:

Subject + can + inf. يستطيع

We use **can** to say what we are able to do:

نستخدم (can + inf.) للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شىء.

- We can **give** money to help poor people.
- I can **read** English books.

Subject + can't + inf. لا يستطيع

We use **cannot/can't** to say what we are not able to do:

نستخدم (can't + inf.) للتعبير عن عدم القدرة على عمل شىء.

- I can't **pick up** that box. My arms are weak.
- I can't **swim** well.

Question

Can + subject + inf. ...?

A: Can you **play** the drums? **B:** Yes, I can.

A: Can Eman **play** chess? **B:** No, she can't.

لاحظ

Subject + can + **inf.** = Subject + am/is/are + able to + **inf.**

- Sara **can ride** a bike. = Sara **is able to ride** a bike.

تستخدم can للطلب أو الاستئذان:

- Can I have a cup of coffee, please?

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Omar can't flew a kite. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (fly) لأن can't يأتى بعدها الفعل فى المصدر.

2. He can drive his father's car? (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Can he) لأنه توجد علامة استفهام فيجب تقديم Can على الفاعل he.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother has ..... a laptop. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
   a) get b) got c) gets d) getting
2. **A:** Have you got long hair? **B:** No, I ..... got short hair. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
   a) have b) haven't c) has d) hasn't
3. We ..... got a big house. Our house is small. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) hasn't b) haven't c) aren't d) weren't
4. Mohamed Salah has ..... dark, curly hair. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) gets b) get c) got d) getting
5. I ..... got glasses, but my sister has got glasses. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) have b) hasn't c) haven't d) has
6. My father has ..... a smartphone. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) get b) got c) gets d) getting
7. All my brothers and sisters ..... dark, curly hair.
   a) has got b) have got c) are got d) is got
8. ..... Faten's dad got a red car?
   a) Has b) Have c) Do d) Does
9. I ..... got brown hair. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
   a) don't have b) hasn't c) doesn't have d) haven't
10. ..... got straight hair?
    a) Have you b) You have c) You are d) Are you

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Has you got a mobile phone? (.....) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
2. Ahmed and I has got curly hair. (.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
3. Your father has get a good job. (.....)
4. Have you got a brother? Yes, I haven't. (.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
5. My best friend have got short, dark hair. (.....) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
6. We is got an apple tree in our garden. (.....) العربية ٢٠٢٢
7. I'm busy, I can come with you right now. (.....)

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What sports ..... you play well?
   a) can b) are c) have d) has
2. My dad only speaks English. He ..... speak French.
   a) can b) can't c) have d) haven't
3. ..... I use your pen, please?
   a) Can b) Has c) Have d) Are
4. They ..... live here, the weather is too cold.
   a) can't b) aren't c) haven't d) hasn't
5. I'm sorry, I ..... help you today, I'm really busy.
   a) can b) can't c) have d) haven't
6. The girls can ..... squash.
   a) play b) plays c) played d) playing
7. I can ride a bike, but I ..... drive a car.
   a) am not b) am c) can d) can't
8. Look! Ali is there! ..... see him?
   a) You have b) Have you c) Can you d) You can
9. I'm sure you ..... do your homework alone. It's very easy!
   a) are b) aren't c) can't d) can
10. I ..... speak French, but I know how to write it.
    a) can b) can't c) have d) haven't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Can your sister singing well? (.....)
2. He can't picked up that box. (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
3. **A:** Can she fly a kite? **B:** Yes, she can't. (.....)
4. He can plays football very well. (.....)
5. I'm a good footballer. I can't play well. (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your favourite sports star.
كيفية الكتابة عن نجمك الرياضى المفضل.

- I like sports.
- My favourite sports star is (الاسم).
- He/She plays (الرياضة).
- He/She is (very/quite) ..... (tall/short).
- He/She is (very/quite) ..... (fast/strong).
- He/She has got (very/quite) (short/long/straight/curly) hair.
- He/She is (very/quite) ..... (kind/friendly).
- He/She always talks to his/her fans.

Writing tips

Note that.
لاحظ الاختصارات التالية:
has = 's
is = 's
have = 've

Example

A sports star

I like sports. There are many sports stars all over the world. My favourite sports star is Mohamed Salah. I like him very much. He is a good footballer. He works hard to achieve his goals. He is 1.75 metres tall. He is quite short for a footballer. He has got dark, curly hair and a beard. He usually has a big smile. He is a fast runner and he scores a lot of goals. He is very kind. He helps many poor people. He gives money to build schools and hospitals. So, all of us should be proud of him.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Mohamed Salah"

I like sports. .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Who is Basel?
   a) His brother. b) His father.
   c) His uncle. d) His friend.
2. What is his favourite subject?
   a) Arabic. b) Maths.
   c) English. d) Science.
3. What does he like?
   a) Reading. b) Video games.
   c) Writing. d) Both A and B.
4. What kind of hair has he got?
   a) Curly. b) Straight. c) Blond. d) Dark.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She has long ..... hair. It's very beautiful.
   a) around b) straight c) funny d) poor
2. My uncle is very funny. He has a big ..... on his face.
   a) smile b) ear c) eye d) insect
3. How ..... is the Cairo Tower? It is 187 metres. WB
   a) tall b) long c) wide d) much
4. Mohamed Salah, Cristiano Ronaldo and Haaland are famous ..... .
   a) dentists b) footballers
   c) teachers d) accountants
5. In football matches, there are two ..... .
   a) teams b) times
   c) players d) matches
6. Our car can go ..... 150 km/h.
   a) for b) at c) by d) with
7. Adel Emam is a famous film ..... in Egypt.
   a) star b) moon c) land d) runner

8. Eman ..... lots of friends.

a) have got b) haven't c) has got d) hasn't

9. This is too difficult! I ..... do it.

a) can b) can't c) have d) haven't

10. We ..... a lot of homework to do.

a) are b) can c) has got d) have got

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Have you get any brothers? (.....)
2. What is your sister look like? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. **A:** Can your uncle speak Chinese? **B:** Yes, he can't. (.....)
4. I can pick up that box. My arms are weak. (.....) الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

"Your favourite sports star"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Can you give me a ..... of your house?

a) feature b) room c) description d) present

2. Adel ..... to climb that tree.

a) can b) can't c) able d) is able

3. **A:** Have you got long hair? **B:** No. I ..... got short hair.

a) have b) haven't c) has d) hasn't

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 26-28 | WB pages 88 & 89

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

adventure (n)	مغامرة	online diary	مفكرة على الإنترنت
blog post (n)	منشور فى مدونة	scary (adj)	مخيف
busy (adj)	مشغول	sensible (adj)	عاقل/حكيم
character (n)	شخصية	strange (adj)	غريب
heart (n)	قلب	Wonderland (n)	بلاد العجائب
history (n)	التاريخ	website (n)	موقع إنترنت

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

children's story (n)	قصة أطفال	main (adj)	رئيسى/أساسى
clear (adj)	واضح	queen (n)	ملكة
information (n)	معلومة/معلومات	simple (adj)	بسيط

Check Point

Choose and complete: scary – busy – queen – simple

1. A ..... is the wife زوجة of the king.
2. I can't play with you. I'm very ..... .
3. The lion is a ..... animal.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	> art/maths	يدرس الرسم/الرياضيات	get	> angry	يغضب
go	> home	يذهب إلى البيت	make	> decisions	يتخذ قرارات
	> swimming	يذهب للسباحة	twice	> a week	مرتين فى الأسبوع

Prepositions

حروف الجر

at the end of	فى نهاية	shout at	يصيح فى
frightened of	خائف من	write on a website	يكتب فى موقع إنترنت
learn about	يتعلم عن	play with	يلعب مع / بـ

Check Point

Choose and complete: make – of – at – do

1. I like drawing. I ..... art after school.
2. Children are usually frightened ..... dark places.
3. Don't shout ..... your little brother.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of irregular verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
begin	يبدأ	began	begun	swim	يسبح/يعوم	swam	swum
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn	think	يعتقد	thought	thought

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
angry	غاضب	calm	هادئ
brave	شجاع	coward	جبان
clever	ماهر/ذكى	stupid	غبى
hungry	جوعان	full	ممتلئ
interesting	شيق	boring	ممل
late	متأخر	early	مبكر

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **like + (v+ing/n)** يحب

- I like **swimming.**

love (v+ing/n) يحب (بشدة)

- I love **learning** about the past.

2 **Adjectives ending with (ed/ing):** الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed/ing):

الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) تصف الكائن الحى الذى يشعر بهذه الصفة.

- He doesn't know what to do. He is bored.

الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) تصف الكائن الحى أو الشىء الذى يسبب هذه الصفة.

- **The film** was very boring. So, I didn't enjoy it.

3 **Study these adjectives:** ادرس هذه الصفات:

- A clever person **knows a lot.**
- A sensible person **advises people** and **makes good decisions.**
- A brave person is happy to **do something dangerous.**
- Something scary makes you feel **frightened.**
- A busy person is always **doing something.**
- People often feel angry when they are **unhappy about something.**

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions التعريفات

blog	مدونة	A website on which someone writes regularly. It is like an online diary.	بانتظام

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
angry	غاضب	cross	غاضب
clever	ماهر/ذكى	brilliant	متألق/ذكى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
frighten (v)	يخيف	-ed		تحويل الفعل لصفة		frightened (adj)	خائف
sense (n)	حاسة	-ible		تحويل الاسم لصفة		sensible (adj)	عاقل/حكيم

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question:

- What would you like to tell us about yourself?

Read the blog post[1] quickly. What is Yunis's favourite sport? *SB page 26*

All about me

Hi! My name is Yunis. I have got short, dark, curly hair. I live in Alexandria with my mum, dad and two brothers.

My favourite school subject is history. I love learning about the past[2]. I like maths and science, too. I do not like art because I am not very good at drawing[3] or painting[4].

I often play sport after school. My favourite sport is basketball. I am good at it because I am tall and I can jump high. I like swimming, too. I go swimming twice[5] a week.

At home, I like reading and playing video games. I do not like watching TV. I think it is boring[6].

(1) منشور على مدونة إلكترونية (2) الماضى
(3) الرسم (4) التلوين
(5) مرتين (6) ممل

Post-reading questions:

1. What do you think of watching TV?
2. Why doesn't Yunis like art?

Pre-listening question:

- What kind of sports do you like?

Listen to the game and write the order. *SB page 27*

Girl 1 Let's play a game. I'm looking at a girl. Who is it?
Girl 2 Does she like watching TV?
Girl 1 No, she doesn't.
Girl 2 Does she like swimming[1]?
Girl 1 Yes, she does.
Girl 2 It's Noha.
Girl 1 Good! OK. Number two. Who is it?
Girl 2 Does she like swimming?
Girl 1 Yes, she does. She loves swimming!
Girl 2 Does she like playing basketball?
Girl 1 No, she doesn't.
Girl 2 It's Dina.
Girl 1 Well done! Three. Who is this?
Girl 2 Does she like watching TV?
Girl 1 Yes, she does.
Girl 2 It's Eman.
Girl 1 No, it isn't.
Girl 2 Does she like basketball?
Girl 1 Yes, she does.
Girl 2 It's Maya.
Girl 1 Yes!
Girl 2 OK, so the last one loves painting[2], she likes watching TV and she doesn't like playing basketball. It's Eman.
Girl 1 Yes again!

Dina
swim
paint
play/basketball

Noha
swim
watch/TV
paint

Eman
watch/TV
paint
play/basketball

Maya
watch/TV
paint
play/basketball

(1) السباحة (2) التلوين/ الرسم

Post-listening question:

- Did you like the game? Why/ Why not?

Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite subject?

Read the blogs and write the questions a–c in the correct place.

WB page 88

a. Which sport do you like?

b. What do you do in the evening?

c. What is your favourite subject?

c. What is your favourite subject?

1 My name is Riham. My favourite subject at school is science. I love learning about how things work. I like doing maths, too. I am quite good at maths.

a. Which sport do you like?

2 I quite like doing sport. My favourite sport is tennis. I like playing it with my friends, but I am not very good at it.

b. What do you do in the evening?

3 I usually go home after school. I do not like playing computer games. After I do my homework, I like reading a book. I like writing stories, too.

Post-reading questions:

1 Why do you think Riham isn't good at tennis?

2 What subjects is Riham good at?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 4

- Who is your favourite writer?

Look at the pictures. What do you think the story is about? Is it a true story?

SB page 28

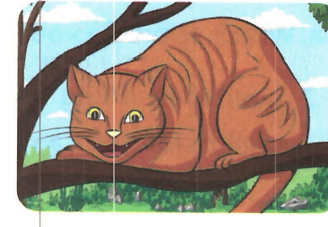
Alice's Adventures in Wonderland

by Lewis Carroll

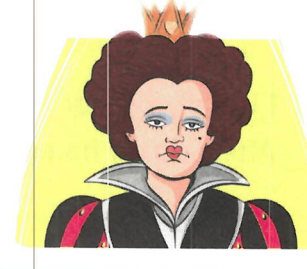
Alice's Adventures in *Wonderland*(1) is a famous children's story. **Alice's** adventure(2) begins when she goes to Wonderland. Alice thinks that Wonderland is interesting, but it is a strange(3) place. She is a sensible(4) girl, but she does not understand Wonderland.

Alice is also brave(5) and clever(6). She meets a lot of interesting characters(7).

Alice often sees **the White Rabbit**. The White Rabbit is very busy(8) – and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.



The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly. He tells Alice about Wonderland and helps her to find different places and characters.



The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a scary(9) person. She is always angry(10) and she shouts at people. Alice is brave, so she is not frightened(11) of her.

At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again.

(1) بلاد العجائب	(2) مغامرة	(3) غريب
(4) عاقل	(5) شجاع	(6) ماهر
(7) شخصيات	(8) مشغول	(9) مخيف
(10) غاضب	(11) خائف	

Post-reading questions:

1. Alice is a brave girl. Explain.
2. What have you learnt from the story?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like ..... because I am very good at drawing.
   a) art b) history c) science d) maths
2. I often ..... swimming on Fridays.
   a) make b) catch c) go d) do
3. I do not like this programme. I think it is ..... .
   a) boring b) cool c) interesting d) good
4. A busy person is always ..... . WB الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) talking b) walking
   c) laughing d) doing something
5. Something scary makes you feel ..... . WB الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
   a) frightened b) happy c) funny d) free
6. Tamer is writing about his weekend in his online ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) printer b) diary c) mouse d) laptop
7. A ..... person knows a lot. WB
   a) brave b) busy c) clever d) sad
8. A blog is a/an ..... on which someone writes regularly. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) website b) playground c) office d) library
9. People often feel ..... when they are unhappy about something.
   a) weak b) strong c) hungry d) angry
10. A sensible person ..... good decisions.
    a) goes b) watches c) makes d) does
11. I like history, so I love learning about the ..... .
    a) present b) past c) now d) tomorrow
12. Alice is the main ..... in the story I read. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) diary b) blog c) post d) character
13. She is a wise girl. This means she is ..... . دمياط ٢٠٢٣
    a) naughty b) sensible c) bad d) lazy

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A brave person is happy to do something ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) fun b) strange c) bad d) dangerous
2. My father is ..... . He thinks well. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) sensible b) nervous c) bored d) strange
3. She is a ..... person, she shouts at people. قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) friendly b) sensible c) brave d) scary
4. A blog is a/an ..... diary. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
   a) online b) offline c) inline d) line
5. Ahmed likes ..... because he loves learning about the past.
   a) painting b) post c) post d) history
6. He didn't do his homework, so the teacher is very ..... .
   a) happy b) angry c) brave d) scared
7. I always ..... sport on holidays. My favourite sport is football.
   a) play b) make c) go d) take
8. She is good at art. She loves ..... .
   a) playing b) swimming c) painting d) printing
9. I like ..... maths. I am quite good at maths.
   a) giving b) making c) playing d) doing
10. I like reading books and ..... stories.
    a) giving b) writing c) helping d) doing
11. We can't live without a ..... .
    a) heart b) beard c) moustache d) leg
12. Who is the main ..... of the story?
    a) character b) website c) adventure d) heart
13. I usually go swimming on Fridays. I do it ..... .
    a) kindly b) clearly c) nicely d) regularly

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـQuiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Describing a character from a story

وصف شخصية من قصة

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف **Response** جملة الرد

online

She's clever, brave and sensible. She goes to Wonderland.
هى شخصية ماهرة وشجاعة وعاقلة. هى تذهب إلى بلاد العجائب.

She's Alice. إنها «أليس».

He is very busy – and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.
هو مشغول جداً. هو عادة متأخر ويجرى بسرعة دائماً.

He's the White Rabbit. إنه «وايت رابيت».

He is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly.
هو مضحك. لديه ابتسامة كبيرة وودود جدًا.

He's the Cheshire Cat. إنه «شيشاير كات».

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Noha is asking Sara about reading. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

Noha : Hi, Sara. How are you?
Sara : (1)..... .
Noha : Do you like reading?
Sara : (2)..... . I like reading books very much.
Noha : (3).....?
Sara : I read books at the library.
Noha : (4).....?
Sara : My favourite book is Alice's Adventures in Wonderland.
Noha : Is it interesting?
Sara : (5)..... .

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء الى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about your favourite book.

كيف تكتب عن كتابك المفضل.

- I like reading.
- I like reading books by (اسم الكاتب).
- My favourite book is (اسم القصة / الكتاب).
- It's about a girl/boy called (الشخصية).

Writing tips

A paragraph is a group of related sentences that present one topic or one idea.
الفقرة هى مجموعة من الجمل التى تقدم موضوعًا أو فكرة واحدة.

Example

The book I like

I like reading because reading is my favourite hobby. I like reading books by Lewis Carroll. My favourite storybook is *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*. It's about a girl called Alice. Alice has a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She meets a lot of interesting characters in Wonderland. She meets the White Rabbit which is always late. She also meets the Cheshire Cat which has a big smile, at last she meets the Queen of Hearts. She is always angry and shouts at people. At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again.

2. How to write about your best friend.

كيف تكتب عن صديقك المفضل.

- My best friend is called (الاسم).
- He/She has got (صفة) hair.
- He/She likes (هواياته).
- I like him/her because he/she is a lot of fun.

Example

My best friend

I have many friends. We go to school together. I like to spend good time with them. We usually play together. We help each other. I like them all, but my best friend is called Fatma. She's got long, straight hair. She's got brown eyes. She's very friendly. She likes reading and playing squash. I like her because she's a lot of fun. She helps me when I need help. She usually visits me at home. My parents like her, too. They say that she's a good girl. I hope we go to the same university.

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

I like reading short stories so much. One of my favourite stories is "Alice's Adventures in Wonderland". It is a famous children's story. Alice had a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She met a lot of interesting characters. Wonderland was a strange, but interesting place for Alice. Alice was a sensible, brave and clever girl. She met the White Rabbit that was always late and ran fast. The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal which helps Alice to find different places and characters. The Queen of Hearts was a scary person but Alice was not frightened of her.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is this passage about?

.....

2. How did the Cheshire Cat help Alice?

.....

3. What do you think of Alice?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "her" refers to ..... .
   a) the White Rabbit b) the Cheshire Cat
   c) Alice d) the Queen of Hearts
5. Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a ..... story.
   a) detective b) comic c) children's d) history
6. The underlined word "famous" means ..... .
   a) unknown b) silly c) funny d) well-known

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He is very ..... . He has a big smile.
   a) busy b) brave c) angry d) funny
2. Alice had a lot of ..... in Wonderland. قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) adventures b) places c) devices d) water
3. Sally is always angry and she shouts ..... people.
   a) on b) at c) in d) about
4. He's very ....., so he is not frightened of anything.
   a) brave b) busy c) angry d) uncle
5. My grandfather is ..... . He gives us good advice. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) bad b) sensible c) scary d) worried
6. She is the ..... of this country. She is the most important person there.
   a) story b) character c) queen d) worker

7. I usually visit my grandmother ..... a week.
a) double b) second c) two d) twice

8. Nahla ..... go out tonight. She has an exam tomorrow. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
a) can't b) haven't c) will d) can

9. My little sister has ..... a doll.
a) get b) got c) gets d) getting

10. What ..... Sara got? الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
a) have b) has c) having d) to have

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Have Samir got a beard? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. How many lessons do you got today? (.....) القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
3. I can't open the door. I have got a key. (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
4. You can giving money to the poor. (.....) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite story"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. I like meeting ..... people. They are very nice.
a) bored b) boring
c) interesting d) interested

2. Clever, brave and sensible are ..... .
a) nouns b) verbs
c) adjectives d) adverbs

3. Children often ..... to get what they want.
a) shout b) go
c) write d) make

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

Watch a video

SB pages 29 - 31 | WB pages 90 - 92

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

exciting (adj)	مثير	secret (n/adj)	سر/سرى
garden (n)	حديقة (منزل)	storm (n)	عاصفة
island (n)	جزيرة	treasure (n)	كنز
review (n)	نقد	wheelchair (n)	كرسى متحرك

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

appearance (n)	مظهر	personality (n)	شخصية
(be) called (v)	يسمى/يدعى	pool (n)	حوض السباحة
cool (adj)	رائع	the country (n)	الريف

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

have > lunch	يتناول الغداء	make > a poster	يعمل ملصقًا إعلانيًا
He is a lot of fun.	إنه ممتع للغاية.	notes	يدوّن ملاحظات

Prepositions — حروف الجر

different from	مختلف عن	think of	يعتقد فى
difficult for	صعب لـ	travel around	ينتقل حول
far from	بعيد عن	work on a boat	يعمل على قارب

Check Point

Choose and complete: island – the country – from – cool – garden

1. The weather is very ..... in spring.
2. My grandfather has a farm in ..... .
3. Elephantine ..... is in Aswan.
4. My school is far ..... my house.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 Asking about someone's personality: السؤال عن الصفات الشخصية لشخص ما:

What + is/are + (الفاعل) + like? ما صفاته؟

- **A:** What is your teacher like?
- **B:** He's kind and friendly.

2 Asking about someone's hobbies: السؤال عن هوايات شخص ما:

What + do/does + (الفاعل) + like doing? ماذا يحب أن يفعل؟

- **A:** What do you like doing?
- **B:** I like playing football.

3 Joining words: روابط (الإضافة / التناقض / السبب / النتيجة):

and و (للعطف والإضافة)

- He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together.

but ولكن (للتناقض)

- Basel can't run, but he's fast in his wheelchair.

because لأن (للسبب)

- I like Basel because he's a lot of fun.

so لذلك (للنتيجة)

- Basel's a lot of fun, so I like him.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
exciting مثير	interesting شيق

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
appear (v) يظهر	-ance	تحويل الفعل لاسم	appearance (n) مظهر
excite (v) يثير	-ing	تحويل الفعل لصفة	exciting (adj) مثير

B Reading & Listening Skills

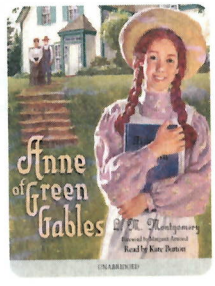
Lesson 5

Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite book?

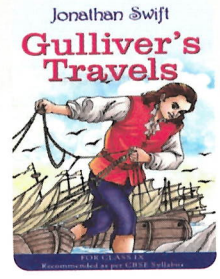
Match the book reviews to the names of the books. Then write them.

WB page 90



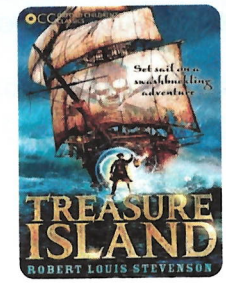
آن من المرتفعات الخضراء

My favourite book is ***Anne of Green Gables*** by Lucy Maud Montgomery. It is about an orphan girl called Anne. She goes to live with a brother and sister in the country. Life is not easy for her and she has many adventures, but Anne is a sensible girl. It is a good book.



رحلات غوليفر

My favourite book is called ***Gulliver's Travels***, by Jonathan Swift. It is about a clever doctor. He works on a boat but there is a big storm. He falls in the sea and swims to a strange place. All the people here are very tall. Some of them are very friendly, but some of them are scary. I like the book very much.



جزيرة الكنـــــز

My favourite book is ***Treasure Island***. It is by Robert Louis Stevenson. It is about a brave boy called Jim. He travels in a big boat to an island. It is very far from his home. The boat has got many scary men on it and they all want to find some money on the island. It is very exciting.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

orphan /ɔːʳfən/ treasure /treʒəʳ/ island /aɪlənd/

Post-reading question:

- Which story did you like most? Why?

Listen and complete the sentences. *WB page 90*

1. My name's Nevine. I like sports and I love playing tennis.
2. I'm Sayed. My favourite subject is English and I like writing stories.
3. Hi, I'm Maya. I like art. I don't like drawing but I love painting.
4. I'm Rami. I love swimming, but I don't like swimming in the sea. It's cold.
5. My name's Lina and this is my sister Maya. We don't like watching TV but we like reading books.

Read Fady's blog post. Why can't Fady and Basel always do the same things?

Lesson 6

SB page 30

Who's your best friend?

My best friend is called Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind and he is very funny. He likes reading and playing video games. Those are my favourite hobbies, too!

Basel has got a wheelchair[1] because he cannot walk. It is not easy for Basel to travel around school. I open doors for Basel and I help him to get things in the classroom.

Basel's wheelchair is not usually a problem. We do a lot of things together[2]. He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. Sometimes we even play football in the playground. Basel cannot run, but he is fast in his wheelchair!

(1) كرسى متحرك (2) معًا/سويًا

I like Basel because he is a lot of fun. I am very happy that he is my friend.

Fady, 12

Life Skills

1. How are people in your life different from you?
2. Are differences important? Why/ Why not?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲Remembering ▲Understanding ▲Applying ▲Analysing ▲Evaluating ▲Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Yunis likes watching TV because he thinks it's ..... . الغربية ٢٠٢٢

a) bad b) exciting c) ugly d) boring

2. You should never tell your ..... to other people. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢

a) secret b) post c) poster d) note

3. Hany has got a ..... because he can't walk. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

a) table b) ladder c) pool d) wheelchair

4. Nasser is not very good at maths, ... he is very good at English.

a) so b) because c) and d) but

5. I like Ahmed because he is a lot of ..... . القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) fins b) fans c) fun d) falls

6. This is not my book: it's different ..... mine. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢

a) from b) at c) on d) about

7. She went to live with her grandparents in the ..... . It's quiet there.

a) capital b) boat c) country d) city

8. He likes the sea. He wants to work ..... a boat.

a) out b) to c) on d) of

9. We usually ..... lunch at four o'clock.

a) do b) have c) go d) write

10. We have a house with a big ..... . We plant some trees there.

a) garden b) pool c) island d) secret

11. Life is not easy ..... poor people.

a) for b) at c) on d) in

12. This is a good book. I read a good ..... about it.

a) treasure b) country c) review d) poster

13. We went on a school trip. It was ..... . I enjoyed so much.

a) cool b) boring c) strange d) bad

1 Complete the following dialogue:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

Ahmed asks Hossam about his favourite sport.

Ahmed : What's your favourite sport, Hossam?

Hossam : (1).....

Ahmed : Why are you good at it?

Hossam : (2).....

Ahmed : (3).....?

Hossam : I play basketball in the club.

Ahmed : (4).....?

Hossam : I play basketball twice a week.

Ahmed : Can I play with you?

Hossam : (5).....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is something you don't want people to know about. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) secretary b) truth
   c) secret d) lie
2. He can't walk, he needs a ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) chain b) swing
   c) wing d) wheelchair
3. The first day at school was ..... . I liked it so much.
   a) exciting b) boring
   c) ugly d) bad
4. He likes reading and ..... video games.
   a) writing b) playing
   c) making d) doing
5. An email is a simple ..... sent through the internet. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) gift b) passage
   c) message d) notebook
6. He has a kind, friendly ..... . We all like him.
   a) storm b) review
   c) problem d) personality

7. Students should ..... notes of what their teachers say.
a) make b) do c) play d) catch

8. I love swimming, ... I don't like swimming in the sea.
a) so b) but c) because d) and

9. He is kind ..... he is very funny.
a) and b) so c) but d) because

10. Mayar loves ..... on Fridays.
a) cook b) cooked c) cooking d) to cooking

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Basmala gets up late on Friday so it's a holiday. (.....)
2. I like football because I don't like watching matches on TV. (.....)
3. I wasn't hungry, but I didn't eat. (.....)
4. I love English, Arabic so Italian. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your best friend"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. *"Gulliver's Travels"*, ... Jonathan Swift, is about a clever doctor.
a) for b) with c) at d) by

2. This book is about a brave boy ..... Jim.
a) is called b) called c) calling d) calls

3. I like Basel because he is a lot of ..... .
a) smile b) cool c) fun d) funny

Review on Unit 3

Vocabulary

adventure	مغامرة
island	جزيرة
angry	غاضب
appearance	مظهر
moustache	شارب
beard	لحية
personality	شخصية
runner	عداء/متسابق جرى
character	شخصية
children's story	قصة أطفال
sensible	عاقل/حكيم
curly	مجعد
sports star	نجم رياضى
storm	عاصفة
exciting	مثير
strange	غريب
famous	مشهور
team	فريق
the country	الريف
wanderland	بلاد العجائب
friendly	ودود
treasure	كنز
wheelchair	كرسى متحرك
fan	معجب/مشجع

Language

1. Have / Has got

Affirmative

- I have got short, curly hair.
- Mazin has got a bike.

Negative

- They haven't got curly hair.
- My dad hasn't got a beard.

Question

- Have you got glasses?
- Has your father got a beard?

2. Can / Can't

Affirmative

- We can **give** money to help poor people.
- I can **read** English books.

Negative

- I can't **pick up** that box. My arms are weak.
- I can't **swim** well.

Question

- **A:** Can you **play** the drums?
  B: Yes, I can.
- **A:** Can Eman **play** chess?
  B: No, she can't.

Skills

Describing a character from a story

- She's clever, brave and sensible. She goes to Wonderland.

هى شخصية ماهرة وشجاعة وعاقلة. هى تذهب إلى بلاد العجائب.

- **She's Alice.** إنها "أليس".

- He is very busy – and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.

هو مشغول جدًا. هو عادة متأخر ويجرى بسرعة دائماً.

- **He's the White Rabbit.** إنه "الوايت رابت".

- He is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly.

هو مضحك. لديه ابتسامة كبيرة وودود جدًا.

- **He's the Cheshire Cat.**

إنه "شيشاير كات".

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 3

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What is your favourite book?
   a) Alice. b) Treasure Island.
   c) Gulliver's Travels. d) Anne of Green Gables.
2. Who wrote it?
   a) Jonathan Swift. b) Lucy Maud.
   c) Robert Louis. d) Shakespeare.
3. What is it about?
   a) A sailor. b) A brave boy.
   c) An orphan. d) A doctor.
4. Where does he/she work?
   a) In a garden. b) On a boat.
   c) At a hospital. d) At a school.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: قنا ٢٠٢٣

Asmaa and Sara are talking about sport.

Sara : Hi, Asmaa. How are you?
Asmaa : (1)..... .
Sara : (2).....?
Asmaa : My favourite sport is football.
Sara : (3).....?
Asmaa : I play it at the club.
Sara : Who is your favourite player?
Asmaa : (4)..... .
Sara : Does he score a lot of goals?
Asmaa : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢

I have got many friends, but Akram is my best friend. He has got short, dark, straight hair. He lives in Qalyoubia governorate with his mum, dad and two sisters. His favourite subject is history because he loves learning about the past. He also likes maths and science. He doesn't like art because he isn't good at drawing or painting. His favourite sport is swimming. He likes it greatly. He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. Sometimes we even play football in the playground. I like him because he is a lot of fun. I am very happy that he is my friend.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage about?

.....

2. What do you think of Akram?

.....

3. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Akram has got ....., straight hair.
   a) dark b) light c) red d) brown
5. Akram lives in ..... governorate.
   a) Qena b) Qalyoubia c) Gharbia d) Cairo
6. Akram doesn't like art because he is ..... at art.
   a) good b) brilliant c) clever d) bad

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Haaland ..... many goals every year.
   a) plays b) helps c) takes d) scores
2. I am a ..... of Mohammad Salah. قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) fin b) fan c) fun d) customer
3. He has three cars and three houses. He is very ..... .
   a) rich b) poor c) weak d) fast

4. There are many interesting ..... in this story. الجيزة ٢٠٢٠

a) devices b) characters c) players d) actors

5. A ..... person is the person who always thinks carefully. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) fat b) strong c) sensible d) lazy

6. Hani uses a ..... to go to school because he can't walk. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢

a) pencil case b) wheelchair c) sharpener d) pencil

7. My teacher asked me to ..... a poster about a famous person.

a) make b) do c) stay d) save

8. ..... got any questions to ask?

a) You have b) Have you c) Do you d) You do

9. My son ..... got blue eyes.

a) does b) is c) have d) has

10. I can't ..... my coffee. It's too hot.

a) to drink b) drinks c) drink d) drinking

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I'm tired, so I went to bed very late. (.....)
2. We can't go now. I am ready. (.....)
3. The music is so loud. I can't hearing you. (.....)
4. She can jumps very high. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: الإسكندريه ٢٠٢٢

"A famous sports star"

.....

.....

.....

.....

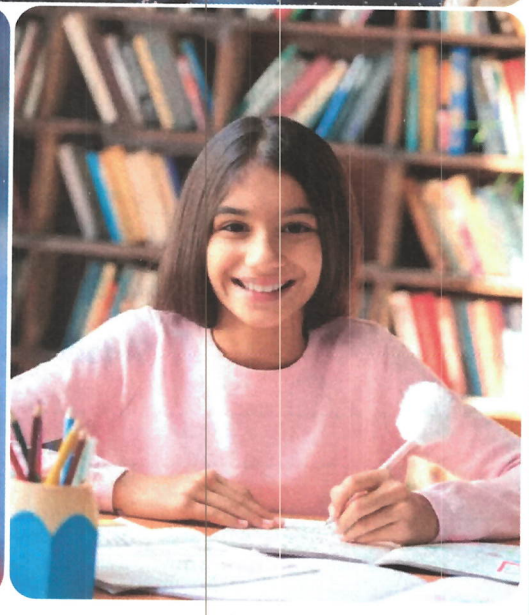
.....

.....

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Review A



Units 1, 2 & 3

Review A

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

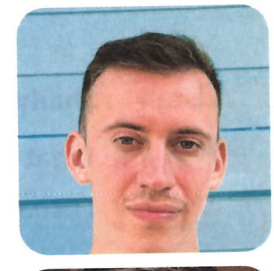
- What is your father's job?

Read the text. Write a title and circle the correct words. *SB page 32*

1. ☐

This is my aunt. Her name's Amal. She's my mum's sister. She's got long, dark, curly hair and she's got glasses. Aunt Amal is very kind.

2. ☐



This is my uncle. His name's Nader and he's got short, dark hair. Uncle Nader is very tall! He's a teacher and he's very clever.

3. ☐

Aunt Amal and Uncle Nader have got two children – a son and a daughter. They're my cousins. Their names are Fares and Malak. This is Fares. He's five. He's got short, curly hair and he's very friendly.

4. ☐

Malak is two. She's got short, straight hair. She likes playing with her toys. She usually has a big smile. I think she's very funny.

Post-reading question:

- Why do you think Malak is funny?

Pre-listening question:

- Do you think that children like their schools? Why?

Listen and circle the correct words. *WB page 93*

Aya Hi! My name is Aya. My friends have got long, straight hair but I have got short, curly hair. We go to a girls' school in Cairo. My favourite school subject is Art. I love drawing. I am not very good at it, but I want to be! We have Art at quarter to eleven, after Maths and before English. I have got one brother and one sister. My brother is very friendly and my sister is very clever.

Lesson 2

Listen to Shady talking about his day. Circle the correct words. *SB page 33*

Woman What time do you get up, Shady?

Shady I usually get up at a quarter to seven on a school day.

Woman How do you travel to school?

Shady I always walk to school with my brother. We never go by car.

Woman Do you like school?

Shady Yes, I do! My lessons are interesting and I see my friends. I always sit next to my best friend, Hassan, in lessons.

Woman And what do you do after school?

Shady I sometimes play sport. On Mondays, I play football, and on Wednesdays, I go swimming.

Woman Do you have any other hobbies? Do you play chess?

Shady No! I never play chess. I don't like it. But I often listen to music or watch TV.

Post-listening question: - What do you usually do in your free time?

Unit 4

We're using technology!

Objectives of the unit

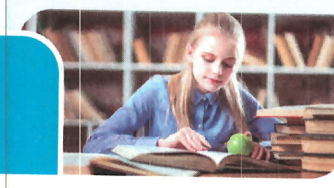
Tapescripts

Reading	A text message conversation; a text about hobbies
Writing	A paragraph and a poster about online safety
Listening	A description of technology in a classroom; a phone call
Speaking	Describing the technology in your classroom; a guessing game; giving instructions
Language	There is / there are; the present continuous
Life Skills	Problem solving; resilience

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

Watch a video



SB pages 34 - 37 | WB pages 95 & 96

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

3D printer (n)	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	printer (n)	الطابعة
click on the icon	ينقر على أيقونة (بالكمبيوتر)	send a photo	يرسل صورة
guess (ed) (v)	يخمن	send a text message	يرسل رسالة نصية
look at a website	يلقى نظرة على موقع إلكترونى	tablet (n)	الجهاز اللوحى (تابلت)
mouse (n)	فأرة الكمبيوتر	take a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية
MP3 player (n)	مشغل إم بى ثرى	tap on the icon	يضغط على أيقونة (بالهاتف)
phone charger (n)	شاحن الهاتف	use technology	يستخدم التكنولوجيا
print (ed) (v)	يطبع	write an email	يكتب رسالة بريد إلكترونى

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

design >	an icon	يصمم أيقونة	make >	a model	يصنع نموذجاً
do >	computer studies	يدرس الكمبيوتر		chess pieces	يرتب قطع الشطرنج
	homework	يقوم بعمل الواجب	sleep >	in a chair	ينام على كرسى

Prepositions — حروف الجر

at the moment	فى هذه اللحظة	look for	يبحث عن
charge … with	يشحن ... بـ	on a laptop/ a computer/ a mobile phone	على اللاب توب/ الكمبيوتر/ الهاتف المحمول

Check Point

Choose and complete: MP3 player – for – tap – use

1. I can't find my pen. Will you help me look ..... it?
2. Most people ..... technology nowadays.
3. I listen to music on my ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والتعبيرات اللغوية و حروف الجر.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
mean	يعنى/يقصد	meant	meant
send	يرسل	sent	sent

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
new	جديد	old	قديم
online	عبر الإنترنت	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت
sleep	ينام	wake up	يستيقظ

Language Notes

1 **Would you like to + inf. .....?** — هل تود أن/هل تريد أن ...؟
I'd (would) like to + inf. — أنا أود أن

- Would you like to **use** a 3D printer?
- I'd like to **take** a selfie.

2 الاسم المركب من كلمتين عند جمعه نجمع الكلمة الثانية فقط.

- laptop computers / mobile phones.

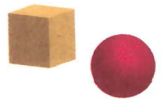
3 **Prepositions of place:** — حروف جر المكان:

next to بجانب/بجوار

behind خلف

in front of أمام

under تحت


near بالقرب من

4 **An MP3 player**
لاحظ استخدام an مع كلمة MP3 player لأنها تبدأ بصوت متحرك حيث إن حرف (M) ينطق (em)

- There's an MP3 player on the desk.

5 **one of + (اسم جمع) + فعل مفرد** — واحد من .....

- One of my friends likes computer studies.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions التعريفات

A printer الطابعة	a machine[1] which is connected to[2] a computer and can make copies[3] of information
An MP3 player مشغل إم بى ثرى	a machine or a computer program[4] that plays music
A blog مدونة	is an online[5] diary.

(1) آلة
(2) متصلة بـ
(3) تنسخ
(4) برنامج
(5) عبر الإنترنت

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
send يرسل	post يرسل بالبريد/ينشر
small صغير	tiny صغير جدًا

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
charge (v) يشحن	-er	تحول الفعل لاسم	charger (n) شاحن
print (v) يطبع			printer (n) الطابعة

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word الكلمة	Similar word الكلمة المشابهة
tap يضغط	tape شريط
click ينقر	clock ساعة حائط
mouse فأرة	mouth فم

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. One of my sisters ..... in primary school.
   a) are b) is c) has d) have
2. To get the noun from the verb "print", add the suffix "..... ".
   a) -er b) -or c) -ment d) -ness

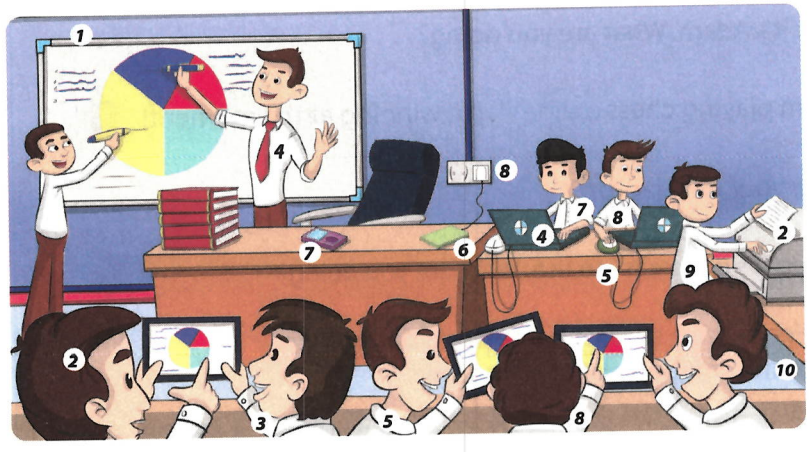
B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- What forms of technology do you use at school?

Read Ziad's description of his classroom. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences. *SB pages 34 & 35*



(1) الأجهزة اللوحية
(2) أجهزة الكمبيوتر المحمول
(3) فأرة
(4) طابعة
(5) يطبع
(6) هاتف محمول
(7) يشحن
(8) شاحن الهاتف
(9) مشغل أغانٍ

I am Ziad and this is a picture of my classroom. We often use tablets (1) in school. There are two laptop computers (2) in the classroom, too. One laptop has got a mouse (3). I don't know why it's called a mouse. Do you know? And there's a printer (4), too. My friend, Omar, is printing (5) his homework.

I have got a mobile phone (6) but it's in my bag – we don't use our phones in the classroom. Mr Osman has got a phone on his desk. He's charging (7) his phone with a phone charger (8). And he's got a new MP3 player (9), it's small and blue. Can you see it?

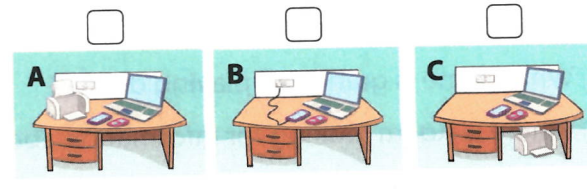
Post-reading question: Choose:

- The text is about using ..... in the classroom.

a) mobile phones b) technology c) nature d) sports

Listen to the description of the classroom. Tick (✓) the correct picture. *SB page 35*

There's a laptop computer on the table. Under the table, there's a printer. There isn't an MP3 player, but there are two mobile phones near the laptop. The laptop has got a mouse.



Pre-reading question:

- What is your father doing now?

Read the text message conversation. What is in this photo? *SB page 36*

online

- Hi, Granddad. It's Adam. What are you doing?

* I'm playing chess online[1]. I'm winning at the moment!

- Are you using your new laptop?

* Yes, it's quite easy to use. What are you doing?

- I'm doing my computer studies homework. I'm looking at websites for information about 3D printers[2].

* What are your mum and Alia doing?

- They're taking selfies[3]. I'm sending you one of their photos now.

(1) عبر الإنترنت
(2) الطابعات ثلاثية الأبعاد
(3) يلتقط صورًا شخصية

* Oh yes! That's a great photo.

Type a message

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

website /websaɪt/
information /ɪnfəˈmeɪʃən/

Post-reading questions:

1. What game is granddad playing online?
2. Where is Adam looking for information about 3D printers?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I bought a new MP3 ..... to play music. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) computer b) player c) speaker d) printer
2. I use the ..... to recharge my mobile phone. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) earphone b) tablet c) charger d) mouse
3. You can use the ..... to click on different icons on the computer. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) mouse b) printer c) charger d) mouth
4. I ..... on the icon many times, but the mobile didn't work. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
   a) clicked b) tapped c) rung d) knocked
5. I'd like to ..... a selfie in front of the river. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) make b) take c) tap d) click
6. We use our ..... in the classroom to learn.
   a) chargers b) tablets c) players d) phones
7. A/An ..... is a kind of computer. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) white board b) charger c) MP3 player d) laptop
8. I like ..... models. This is a model plane.
   a) sending b) writing c) making d) doing
9. The whiteboard is ..... the teacher.
   a) between b) next c) behind d) in front
10. I like to play games ..... my mobile phone.
    a) in b) on c) at d) for
11. The book is full of useful ..... .
    a) design b) white board c) information d) printer
12. To know some information about animals, ... at this website.
    a) look b) click c) tap d) write
13. A blog is a/an online ..... . WB
    a) diary b) dairy c) day d) date

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can you ..... me a text message when you arrive? الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) take b) send c) play d) do
2. There is a keyboard ..... to the laptop. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) far b) in front c) next d) under
3. My brother likes to ..... computer studies.
   a) make b) use c) send d) do
4. He ..... his mobile to talk to his friends.
   a) makes b) smiles c) uses d) sends
5. Computers and mobiles are examples of ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) food b) technology c) subjects d) hobbies
6. He's charging his phone ..... a phone charger.
   a) in b) on c) with d) by
7. We can ..... a video call with our cousins in England. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) make b) take c) see d) send
8. Don't ..... photos to people you don't know. WB
   a) receive b) make c) send d) play
9. ..... the icon on your computer. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) Give b) Fill c) Click d) Play
10. I looked ..... my watch everywhere, but I didn't find it.
    a) after b) at c) for d) up
11. Marwan likes playing games ..... . He is on the internet every day. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) online b) offline c) line d) outline
12. There is a mouse ..... the laptop on the teacher's desk. WB
    a) far b) in front c) next d) near

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

1 There is: يوجد للمفرد — There are: يوجد للجمع

Affirmative

There is + اسم مفرد (يعد) / اسم لا يعد ... .
- There is a printer.
- There is some water.

There are + اسم جمع ... .
- There are two laptops.
- There are some boys here.

Negative

There isn't + اسم مفرد (يعد) / اسم لا يعد ... .
- There isn't a printer.
- There isn't any water.

There aren't + اسم جمع ... .
- There aren't any laptops.
- There aren't any boys here.

Yes/No questions

Is there + اسم مفرد (يعد) / اسم لا يعد ...?
- Is there a printer?
- Is there any water?

Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.

Are there + اسم جمع ...?
- Are there **any** laptops?
- Are there **any** boys here?

Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.

Remember — **some & any**

- نستخدم (some) بمعنى بعض (فى الجملة المثبتة)، ويأتى بعدها اسم يعد (جمع) أو اسم لا يعد:

- There are some **apples** in this dish.
- There is some **rice** in this dish.

- يمكن استخدامها أيضا فى العرض والطلب:

- Would you like some **tea**? (عرض)
- Can I have some **books**? (طلب)

- نستخدم (any) بمعنى أى (فى الجملة المنفية والسؤال بمعنى هل)، ويأتى بعدها اسم يعد (جمع) أو اسم لا يعد:

- There **aren't** any **tablets** in my classroom.
- **Is** there any juice in the bottle?

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. There are any notebooks in your bag? (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Are there) لوجود علامة استفهام (صيغة سؤال).

2. There are any oranges on the tree. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (some) لأن الجملة مثبتة.

2 The present continuous tense: زمن المضارع المستمر

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present continuous to talk about things that are happening now.

- يستخدم للتعبير عن شىء يحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).

- She is writing a letter **at the moment**.
- I am reading a story **now**.

Form التكوين

I	am	
He / She / It	is	inf + ing
You / We / They	are	

- I am **playing** football.
- He is **reading** a book.
- They are **swimming**.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

(now الآن - Look! انظر - Listen! أنصت - Watch out! احترس! - still ما زال
at the moment فى هذه اللحظة - at present فى الوقت الحاضر)

- My grandfather is using his laptop now.
- My uncle is watching TV at the moment.

لاحظ

- عند إضافة الـ (ing) للفعل:
  - الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) نحذف الـ (e) عند إضافة الـ (ing): (take - taking) - (come - coming)
  - بعض الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك، غالبًا ما نضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة الـ (ing):
    (put - putting) - (cut - cutting) - (swim - swimming)
  - الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ie) نحذف الـ (ie) ثم نضع (ying). (die - dying) - (lie - lying)

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Ramy study English at the moment. (.....)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (is studying) لوجود (at the moment) الدالة على المضارع المستمر.
2. Watch out! A car comes. (.....)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (is coming) لوجود (Watch out!) الدالة على المضارع المستمر.
3. I can't go out. I do my homework. (.....)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (am doing) لأنه لا يستطيع الخروج الآن، أى زمن فعل الواجب مضارع مستمر.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There's ..... cheese in the fridge. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) any b) some c) a lot d) many
2. I'm very thirsty. Can I have ..... cold water, please?
   a) many b) a lot c) some d) any
3. There ..... a printer above the table.
   a) is b) are c) has d) have
4. Are there ..... tablets? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) some b) a c) any d) a lot
5. There isn't an MP3 player, but there ..... two mobile phones.
   a) are b) aren't c) is d) isn't
6. ..... any juice in the bottle?
   a) Is there b) Are there c) There is d) There are
7. There ..... any notebooks in my bag. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) is b) isn't c) are d) aren't
8. There aren't ..... boys in the class. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) some b) any c) no d) much
9. There isn't ..... meat on the table.
   a) a b) a lot c) some d) any
10. ..... any girls in your class?
    a) There is b) Is there c) There are d) Are there

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. There aren't some eggs in the fridge. (.....) دمياط ٢٠٢٢
2. **A:** Is there any milk in the bottle? **B:** No, there is. (.....)
3. Is there any figs in the fridge? (.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
4. We don't have some books on the shelves. (.....) الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
5. There aren't any rice in the dish. (.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
6. Can I have any juice, please? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They ..... at websites for information now. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) are looking b) looking c) looked d) look
2. Look! Adel ..... in the garden. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) works b) are working
   c) is working d) work
3. My sisters are ..... the dishes at the moment.
   a) wash b) washes c) washing d) washed
4. The boys ..... in the playground now.
   a) play b) played c) are playing d) playing
5. My friend ..... his homework now. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) printed b) is printing
   c) printing d) prints
6. Mum and my sister ..... a cake at the moment. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) is baking b) are baking c) bakes d) baked
7. Basmala ..... sleeping now.
   a) can b) does c) is d) has
8. Some kids ..... noise inside the class.
   a) is making b) makes c) making d) are making
9. ..... is cleaning the house at the moment.
   a) Mayada b) Mayada and her mum
   c) We d) I

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She is watches a nice programme now. (.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
2. Ahmed is played chess online. (.....) دمياط ٢٠٢٣
3. I drink tea at the moment. (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
4. Ali and Kamal is riding their bikes. (.....)
5. Listen! She sings beautifully. (.....)
6. My little sister aren't doing her homework at the moment. (.....)

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء الى تمكين الطالب
من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write a description of your classroom.

كيفية كتابة وصف عن حجرتك الدراسية.

- My name's (الاسم).
- We often use (اسم الجهاز) in school.
- There are (العدد) tablet computers in the classroom.
- There aren't any (اسم الجهاز).
- There's a printer, too.
- We use it to print our homework.
- I've got a mobile phone, but I don't use it at school.

Writing tips

Use a heading to tell people what your paragraph is about.

- استخدم عنوانًا لتخبر الناس عن موضوع فقرتك.

Example

Classroom objects

My name's Samy. Our life is going fast now because of technology. Technology helps us get information easily. We often use tablets in school. There are four tablet computers in the classroom. We use them to look for information on the internet. There aren't any laptops. There's a printer, too. We use it to print our homework. There is a board. The teacher always explains the lessons on it. I've got a mobile phone, but I don't use it at school. My favourite lesson is computer studies. At break, I look at websites for new video games.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Your classroom"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهايه الكتاب

1. What do you love?
   a) Park. b) Break.
   c) Nature. d) Technology.
2. What is your favourite hobby?
   a) Playing video games. b) Watching TV.
   c) Playing football. d) Reading.
3. How often do you play on your laptop?
   a) Often. b) Always. c) Usually. d) Never.
4. How often do you play on your mobile phone?
   a) Usually. b) Always. c) Never. d) Sometimes.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is a photo you take for yourself. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) door b) printer c) selfie d) castle
2. My computer ..... makes a loud click.
   a) mouse b) printer c) charger d) tablet
3. Young people use the ..... to listen to music. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) charger b) MP3 player c) printer d) mouse
4. You can ..... on the icon and find information. قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) tap b) tape c) try d) look
5. Mr. Osama is ..... his phone with a phone charger. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) wearing b) killing c) breaking d) charging
6. We usually use mobile phones to send ..... messages. القاهرة ٢٠٢٠
   a) test b) taste c) text d) taxi
7. There is a phone charger ..... of the printer. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
   a) next b) behind c) in front d) under
8. My sister ..... me with my homework at the moment.
   a) helps b) helping c) helped d) is helping

9. ..... a lot of supermarkets in your city?

a) Is there b) There is c) There are d) Are there

10. There aren't ..... trees in front of my house.

a) any b) some c) a d) a lot

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Manal having lunch with her family now. (.....)
2. There isn't some sugar in my tea. (.....)
3. I'm play chess online now. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
4. There are an MP3 player behind the laptop. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Technology you use in the classroom"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. If you ..... an icon for "take a selfie", what will it look like?

a) design b) tap
c) click d) do

2. There are two ..... in the classroom.

a) laptop computer b) laptops computers
c) laptops computer d) laptop computers

3. My brother studies at ..... university in the USA.

a) an b) some
c) a d) much

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 38 - 40 | WB pages 97 & 98

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

dancer (n)	راقصة	programme (n)	برنامج
dictionary (n)	قاموس	school uniform (n)	زى مدرسى
nature (n)	الطبيعة	wave (d) (v)	يلوح بيده

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

break time (n)	وقت الفسحة	puzzle (n)	لغز
drop (ped) (v)	يُسقِط	stay (ed) (v)	يبقى/يقيم/يظل

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

bring > a drink	يحضر مشروبًا	go > outside	يذهب للخارج
do > a hobby	يؤدى هواية	have > a hobby	لديه هواية
talk to > a friend	يتحدث مع صديق	mime > an action	يمثل حدثًا
give > advice	يعطى نصيحة	take > notes	يسجل ملاحظات

Prepositions — حروف الجر

at break/lunchtime	فى الفسحة/وقت الغداء	put my hand up	أرفع يدى لأعلى
on an MP3 player	على مشغل الموسيقى	smile at	يبتسم لـ
programme on	البرنامج يعرض	write with	يكتب باستخدام

Check Point

Choose and complete: programme - at - stay - wave

1. **A:** What's your favourite TV .....? **B:** Wicked Tuna.
2. Smile ..... the camera to get a good photo.
3. We don't ..... in class during the break.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسة والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
different	مختلف	similar/same	مشابه
stay	يبقى/يقيم/يظل	leave	يغادر
hot	حار	cold	بارد

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 like/don't like + being — يحب/يحب ألا يكون .....

- I like being in the garden.
- I don't like being in the house.

2 use + المفعول + to + inf. / for + v +ing — يستخدم ..... لـ

- Hala is using her mobile phone to make/ for making a video call.

3 need + (n) يحتاج / **need to + (inf.)** يحتاج إلى أن

- I need **some water**, please.
- I need to **drink** some water, please.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
hot	حار	warm	دافئ
stay	يبقى/يقيم/يظل	remain	يبقى/يظل

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
act (v)	يتصرف	-ion		تحول الفعل لإسم		action (n)	عمل/تصرف
dance (v)	يرقص	-er		تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل		dancer (n)	راقصة

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question: - What are your brothers/sisters doing now?

Lesson 3

Listen to the conversation between two sisters. What's Randa doing?

SB page 38

Randa Hi, Sherifa, it's Randa.

Sherifa Oh, hello Randa! Where are you? Are you at home?

Randa Yes, and Uncle Yasser's here with our cousins Ola, Reem and Samira.

Sherifa What's mum doing?

Randa She's looking at a website. She wants to make a cake.

Sherifa Yum! Mum makes the best cakes. Is she using the tablet?

Randa No, she isn't. She's using the laptop. Uncle Yasser's using the tablet. He's writing an email.

Sherifa Is grandmother watching TV?

Randa Yes, she is. It's her favourite programme[1] on now.

Sherifa Of course. What are Ola and Samira doing?

Randa They're taking selfies in the garden.

Sherifa Again? They are always taking selfies!

Randa I know. Reem isn't taking a selfie; she is listening to music on her Mp3 player.

Sherifa She's a good dancer[2]! What are you doing, Randa?

Randa I am talking to you!

Sherifa Oh yes!

(1) برنامج

(2) راقصة

Post-listening questions:

1. Do you think they are enjoying their time? Why?
2. If you were Sherifa, would you return home quickly to be with your family?

Pre-listening question: - What do you like to do when you have free time?

Read the conversation between Leila and Judy. Correct the mistakes. Listen and check your answers. *WB page 97*

Judy Hi, Leila. Where are you?

Leila Hi, Judy. I'm **in** the park with my family.

Judy What **are** you doing there?

Leila I'm **sitting** under a tree. It's very sunny.

Judy **Are** your brothers sitting, too?

Leila No, they aren't. They're playing football.

Judy Is your dad **playing** football with them?

Leila No, he isn't. He's not here. He's working today. But my Uncle Hassan is playing football!

Judy What**'s** your mother doing?

Leila Er, wait... here she is. She's bringing me a drink of water. Thanks, Mum!

Post-listening question:

- Do you think Leila will feel sad because her father isn't with them?

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question:

- What are you doing now?

Read the puzzle. Match the numbers with the people. *SB Page 39*

Soha is not making a video call, but she is talking to her friend. Amira is not using any technology. Fatma has got long, curly hair. She is writing. Hala is using her mobile phone to send a text message. Leila is not using a mobile phone. She is using a tablet. Mona is smiling at her phone! She is taking a selfie.

Post-reading question:

- In which room are the girls sitting?

Pre-reading question:

- Do you like using new technology? Why/ Why not?

Lesson 4

Read about Wael and Mazin. Who has got a laptop?

SB Page 40

I love technology[1]! My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop, but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone.

Can you guess my favourite lesson at school? Yes, it's Computer Studies! At break and lunchtime[2], I stay[3] in the classroom and I look at video game websites on my phone.

Wael, age 12

I love nature[4]. I like walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects[5] all around us. I don't like being in the house; I like being in the garden and looking at the sky. At school, I always go outside at break. I go when it's very hot or cold!

I've got a mobile phone. I don't send text messages or make video calls on my phone, but I take photos of flowers.

Mazin, age 13

(1) التكنولوجيا
(2) وقت الغداء
(3) يبقى/يقيم
(4) الطبيعة
(5) حشرات

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

insect /ɪnsekt/

Post-reading questions:

1. What does Mazin like?
2. Is it good to have a hobby that you do all the time? Why/ Why not?

Life Skills

1. What do you think of Wael and Mazin?

.....

2. Who do you think needs help?

.....

3. What advice can you give him?

.....

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I love ..... . I like watching trees, animals and flowers. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) technology b) games c) nature d) sport
2. Pupils should wear their school ..... at school. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) uniforms b) forms c) reforms d) performs
3. Never ..... to your friend during lessons.
   a) talk b) take c) use d) make
4. We can use a ..... if we don't know the meaning of a word.
   a) puzzle b) diary c) dictionary d) notebook
5. I'll go to the kitchen and ..... a drink to my grandmother.
   a) do b) mime c) watch d) bring
6. The boy went on the bus and ..... to his mother.
   a) waved b) stayed c) moved d) dropped
7. I like to write ..... that pen. It's really good.
   a) in b) for c) to d) with
8. If I want to ask my teacher, I ..... my hand up.
   a) fly b) wave c) put d) drop
9. My little sister always ..... water on the floor.
   a) drops b) writes c) gives d) brings
10. **A:** How long did you ..... in Alexandria? **B:** Two weeks.
    a) stay b) say c) leave d) visit
11. We usually have our sandwiches ..... break.
    a) by b) at c) in d) with
12. It's usually ..... in summer.
    a) dark b) cold c) sunny d) cool

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father is a firefighter. He always wears his ..... at work. القليوبية ٢٠٢٠
   a) rule b) uniform c) form d) picture
2. I always listen to songs ..... my MP3 player.
   a) in b) on c) by d) with
3. Our teacher always smiles ..... us. He's friendly.
   a) with b) of c) at d) about
4. I ..... many hobbies on holidays.
   a) bring b) take c) make d) do
5. I usually ..... notes during the lesson.
   a) take b) help c) do d) bring
6. I like doing ..... . They make me think.
   a) toys b) bikes c) kites d) puzzles
7. Mum ..... the best cakes.
   a) designs b) takes c) makes d) does
8. It's her favourite programme ..... now.
   a) on b) in c) with d) by
9. I like playing video games on my ..... .
   a) kite b) MP3 player c) laptop d) dictionary
10. Students should learn how to use their ..... in English classes.
    a) hobbies b) posters c) puzzles d) dictionaries
11. I use my phone ..... send text messages to my friends.
    a) to b) for c) by d) at
12. I always ..... advice to my little brother. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣
    a) get b) bring c) take d) give

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Negative النفى

I	am not	inf + ing
He / She / It	is not (isn't)	inf + ing
You / We / They	are not (aren't)	inf + ing

- I am not **playing** football.
- He is not (isn't) **reading** a book.
- They are not (aren't) **swimming**.

Question السؤال

Yes/No questions

Am / Is / Are **subj.** الفاعل → **inf. + ing ...?**

- **A:** Are you **studying** French?
  - **B:** Yes, I am. - **B:** No, I am not.

Wh-questions

Q. Word + كلمة الاستفهام

am / is / are **subj.** الفاعل → **inf. + ing ...?**

- **A:** What are you doing? - **B:** I'm helping my father.

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. **A:** You are taking a selfie? **B:** No, I am writing an email. (.....)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (Are you) لأنها صيغة سؤال لوجود علامة استفهام.
2. Why is Sara cry? (.....)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (crying) لأن is يتبعها فعل مضاف إليه (ing).
3. He doesn't sending a text message. (.....)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (isn't) لأن الفعل sending آخره (ing).

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... taking a photo? الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
   a) She is b) Is she c) She has d) Has she
2. **A:** Is she watching TV? **B:** No, she ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) is b) isn't c) does d) doesn't
3. She is not ..... a video call, but she is talking to her friend. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) making b) makes c) make d) to make
4. Be quiet! Your little brother ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) sleeps b) sleep c) is sleeping d) has slept
5. Sally ..... her homework at the moment. She is cooking. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢
   a) doesn't do b) does c) is doing d) isn't doing
6. We ..... watching TV, but we are making lunch.
   a) don't b) haven't c) aren't d) isn't
7. What is John ..... at the moment? الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) do b) doing c) does d) did
8. **A:** Are you wearing brown shoes? **B:** Yes, I ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) am b) is c) are d) was
9. **A:** Is Tamer working at the moment? **B:** No, he ..... washing his car.
   a) doesn't b) does c) is d) isn't
10. What ..... your friends doing at the moments?
    a) do b) have c) are d) is

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He isn't study his lessons now. (.....) الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
2. Does your brother sleeping now? (.....) القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
3. He is writing emails at the moment? (.....)
4. What games do you playing online? (.....) قنا ٢٠٢٣
5. **A:** Are you eating? **B:** Yes, I do. (.....)
6. What are the girls does now? (.....) الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Ask and answer questions about your friend.

السؤال والإجابة عن صديقك.

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response جملة الرد
online	
Are you sitting next to your best friend? هل تجلسين بجوار صديقتك المفضلة؟	
	Yes, I am. نعم.
Is she wearing black shoes? هل هى ترتدى حذاء أسود؟	
	No, she isn't. لا.
What are your friends doing? ماذا يفعل أصدقاؤك؟	
	They are watching TV. إنهم يشاهدون التلفاز.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

▶ **Judy is talking to Leila on the phone.**

Judy : Hi, Leila. Where are you?

Leila : Hi, Judy. (1)..... .

Judy : The park! (2).....?

Leila : I'm sitting under a tree in the park. It's very sunny.

Judy : Are your brothers sitting, too?

Leila : (3)..... . They are playing football.

Judy : (4).....?

Leila : No, my father isn't sitting with us. He's working today.

Judy : What is your mother doing?

Leila : (5)..... .

2. Write it right

1. How to write about what your family are doing now.

كيفية الكتابة عما تفعله عائلتك الآن.

- My name's (الاسم).
- I live in (المكان).
- My father is (الوظيفة).
- I have got (العدد) brothers and (العدد) sisters.
- My mother is (ما تقوم به). My father is (ما يقوم به).

Writing tips

Try reading your paragraph out loud to make sure it makes sense.

- حاول قراءة فقرتك بصوت عال لتتأكد أن لها معنى.

Example

What your family are doing now

My name's Amal. I live in Cairo. My father is an engineer. My mother is a teacher. I have got two brothers and no sisters. I am in preparatory one. My brothers go to primary school. We are a happy family. All of us are busy now. My mother is in the kitchen. She is cooking dinner. She is a good cook. Her food is delicious. My father is watching TV. He's watching a football match at the moment. My brothers are playing video games. I am doing computer studies. It's my favourite subject. We are waiting for our dinner. We are very hungry now.

2. How to write about staying safe when you use technology.

كيفية الكتابة عن بقائك آمناً عندما تستخدم التكنولوجيا.

Example

How to stay safe online

The internet is very important. We all use the internet every day. It is easy to use the internet. But when we are online, we need to be more careful. We need to follow some rules to stay safe. Keep your password secret. Don't tell anyone about it. Don't make friends with people you don't know. Don't tell people your personal information, like your telephone number. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell your parents or your teacher.

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

I am Sameer and this is a picture of my classroom. We often use tablets in school. There are two laptop computers in the classroom, too. One laptop has got a mouse. I don't know why it's called a mouse. Do you know? And there's a printer, too. My friend Hady is printing his homework. I have got a mobile phone but it is in my bag. We don't use our phones in the classroom. Mr Hamdy has got a phone on his desk. He's charging his phone with a phone charger. And he's got a new MP3 player. It's small and brown. Can you see it?

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the best title for this text?

.....

2. Do you think it is important to use computers at school? Why/ Why not?

.....

3. What are the means of technology mentioned in the passage?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ..... .
   a) MP3 player b) printer c) mobile d) charger
5. Hamdy is ..... .
   a) a teacher b) a student c) a classmate d) Hady's friend
6. You can listen to music using a/an ..... .
   a) printer b) MP3 player c) mouse d) picture

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I always eat salad ..... lunchtime.
   a) on b) at c) of d) to
2. I like watching trees and birds. I like ..... .
   a) water b) hobbies c) sports d) nature
3. This ..... gives me a lot of information about animals.
   a) screen b) website
   c) mouse d) charger
4. The teacher always ..... us some advice at the end of the lesson.
   a) gives b) follows c) takes d) makes

5. Don't ..... litter in the river. We drink from it.
a) follow b) drop c) take d) mime

6. At break, students shouldn't ..... in the class.
a) use b) bring c) stay d) leave

7. It is always very ..... in summer.
القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a. hot b) cold c) rainy d) snowy

8. Manal's father is not ..... today.
a) works b) working c) work d) worked

9. They aren't sleeping, but they ..... their tablets.
a) use b) using c) are using d) aren't using

10. What's your mother .....?
a) doing b) do c) did d) does

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. No, they are watching TV. They're playing football. (.....)
2. What are you read online? (.....)
3. My dad is at home. He is working today. (.....)
4. Sally is playing chess online? (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"What your family are doing now"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Everyone should ..... a hobby to do.
a) do b) have c) make d) give

2. Sally ..... her tablet and sending photos to her friends.
a) uses b) using c) used d) is using

3. They ..... taking selfies.
a) always have b) have always c) are always d) always are

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 41 - 43 | WB pages 99-101

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

boil (ed) (v)	يغلى	password (n)	كلمة المرور/السر
colourful (adj)	زاهى اللون/ملون	personal information	معلومات شخصية
instructions (n)	تعليمات/إرشادات	tea bag (n)	كيس شاى
kettle (n)	غلاية	telephone number	رقم التليفون

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

answer > a call	يرد على مكالمة	make > friends with	يكوِّن صداقة مع
come > home	يأتى إلى البيت	make > tea	يعمل شاى
keep > secret	يحافظ على سرية	say > hello	يقول أهلًا
look > interesting	يبدو شيقًا	stay > safe	يبقى آمنًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a cup of tea	فنجان شاى	go onto a website	يدخل على موقع إلكترونى
agree with	يتفق مع	take out	يُخرج
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	turn on	يشغل (جهاز)
example of	مثال لـ	worried about	قلق على

Check Point

Choose and complete: stay - to - colourful - for

1. Girls like to wear ..... clothes.
2. I usually ask my teacher ..... help .
3. It's important to ..... safe online

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
keep	يحافظ على	kept	kept

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
agree	يوافق	disagree	لا يوافق
popular	محبوب/شائع	unpopular	غير محبوب
safe	آمن	dangerous	خطير
worried	قلق	calm	هادئ

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 stop + v + ing — يتوقف عن فعل شيء

- Stop playing on your phone and listen to me.

2 Why don't you + inf. .....? — لِمَ لا.....؟ (تستخدم لتقديم الاقتراح).

- Why don't you use an MP3 player?

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

password	كلمة السر	a word or numbers you use to go onto a website	شيء ما (1)
secret	سر	something[1] you do not want to tell[2] people about	يخبر (2)

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
agree	يوافق	accept	يقبل
popular	محبوب/ شائع	famous	مشهور

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
colour (n)	لون	-ful		تحول الاسم لصفة		colourful (adj)	ملون
person (n)	شخص	-al				personal (adj)	شخصي

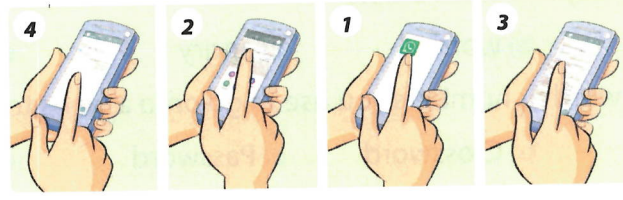
B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-reading question: - Are you good at using technology?

SB page 41

Read the instructions and put the pictures in the correct order.



How to send a text message:

- First, tap the messages icon.
- Write your text message.
- Tap the name of the person.
- Then tap the SEND icon.

2. *Complete the text:*

How to make a video call:

- Turn your tablet on.
- Tap the name of the person.
- Say Hello!

Post-reading question: - How can you send an email?

Lesson 6

Work in pairs. Complete the table with this advice. Can you add any sentences?

SB page 42

Stay safe when you use technology

- Keep[1] your password[2] secret[3].
- Make friends with people you don't know online.
- Tell people your personal information[4] (e.g. telephone number[5]).
- Send photos to people you don't know.
- Ask for help from a parent or teacher.
- Answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know.
- Tell a parent or teacher if you are worried about something.

(1) حافظ على
(2) كلمة المرور
(3) سر
(4) معلومات شخصية
(5) رقم الهاتف

Do (✓)	Don't (×)
• Keep your password secret.	• Don't make friends with people you don't know online.
.....	.....
.....	.....

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's important to stay ..... online. بني سويف ٢٠٢٢
   a) safe b) worried c) angry d) save
2. "....." is a word or numbers you use to go onto a website. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Keyword b) Crossword c) Password d) Secret
3. Write the ..... for how to make a cup of tea. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
   a) information b) messages c) icons d) instructions
4. Don't ..... a phone call from someone you don't know. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) ask b) reply c) answer d) write
5. To make a video call, ... your tablet on.
   a) turn b) look c) come d) keep
6. We use the ..... to make water hot. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
   a) cattle b) kite c) can d) kettle
7. Please keep it ..... . I don't want anyone to know about my plan. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) secret b) secretary c) quite d) away
8. Don't tell anyone about your ..... information on the internet. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) personally b) personality c) personal d) person
9. Children shouldn't make friends ..... people they don't know.
   a) for b) with c) at d) of
10. If you have a problem, ... for help from a parent or teacher.
    a) ask b) say c) stay d) keep
11. My mother is always worried ..... me when I'm late outside.
    a) on b) at c) for d) about
12. We ..... water when we want to make tea.
    a) stay b) say c) boil d) answer
13. Most children like to wear ..... clothes.
    a) bad b) unpopular c) dangerous d) colourful

C Language

Imperative صيغة الأمر

Affirmative الإثبات

- تبدأ صيغة الأمر فى الإثبات بالفعل فى المصدر أو Always + inf. بدون الفاعل. ويمكن ذكر المخاطب.

- Go to the shop.
- Open the door, please. / Please, open the door.
- Always **follow** school rules.
- Nelly, tidy your room, please.

Negative النفى

- وتبدأ صيغة الأمر فى النفى بـ (Don't /Never + inf.) ثم الفعل فى المصدر بدون الفاعل. ويمكن ذكر المخاطب.

- Don't go to the shop.
- Don't open the door, please. / Please, don't open the door.
- Never **come** to school late.
- Don't speak loudly, Omar.

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Following your school rules, Basmala. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Follow) لأنها صيغة أمر و هى تبدأ بالفعل فى المصدر.

2. Didn't talk during the lesson. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Don't) لأنها صيغة أمر منفى.

3. Ali, brings some water, please. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (bring) لأن Ali هنا مخاطب، وبعدها فعل أمر يبدأ بالفعل فى المصدر.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... on your tablet to make a video call. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Turns b) Turn c) Turning d) Turned
2. ..... shout. My father is asleep. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) Don't b) Not c) Do d) Often
3. To send a text message, ... the SEND icon. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) tap b) tapping c) tapped d) to tap
4. ..... photos to people you don't know.
   a) Send b) Don't send c) Didn't send d) Sending
5. Lara, ... your password secret.
   a) kept b) keeping c) keep d) keeps
6. Use technology and ..... safe online.
   a) to stay b) staying c) stayed d) stay
7. Don't ..... a phone call from someone you don't know.
   a) answer b) answering c) answers d) answered
8. ..... a few minutes preparing yourself for exercises. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) Spends b) Spend c) Spending d) Spent
9. First, ... some water in a kettle.
   a) putting b) to putting c) to put d) put
10. ..... write on your desk, keep it clean.
   a) Didn't b) Doesn't c) Never d) Can't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Don't eating when you use a computer. (.....) القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
2. Taking out the tea bag. (.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
3. Boils the water, Nada. (.....) بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
4. Tamer! Didn't leave your toys here. (.....)
5. Make noise in the library. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
6. Don't been rude to other people. (.....)

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sherief is asking Lamiaa about Reem, Sara and Aya.

Sherief : What are Reem and Sara doing?

Lamiaa : (1)..... .

Sherief : Again! They are always taking selfies. (2).....?

Lamiaa : Aya is listening to her MP3 player.

Sherief : Do you like taking selfies, Lamiaa?

Lamiaa : (3)..... .

Sherief : (4).....?

Lamiaa : Because my phone camera isn't good.

Sherief : Can we take a selfie together with my phone?

Lamiaa : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Please, ... the TV on to watch the new film.
   a) make b) keep c) turn d) stay
2. You should keep your ..... secret. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) sport b) food
   c) friends d) password
3. It is good to ..... new friends.
   a) make b) do c) stay d) spend
4. Our English book ..... interesting, so lots of people use it.
   a) takes b) makes c) looks d) asks
5. Stay safe when you use ..... .
   a) puzzle b) password c) technology d) secret
6. We use the kettle to ..... water.
   a) keep b) stay c) look d) boil
7. Don't ..... photos to people you don't know. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) talk b) write c) send d) click
8. He ..... a story now. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) read b) reads c) has read d) is reading

9. Look! the car is ..... very fast. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢

a) moves b) moving c) move d) moved

10. ..... your hands before eating.

a) Wash b) Washing c) To wash d) Washed

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Do your parents sitting under the tree? (.....)
2. There are some juice in the bottle. (.....)
3. Don't to use your phone in class. (.....)
4. Sally, writes your name on your book. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

"How to stay safe online"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. When the mobile rings, I like to ..... the call.

a) send b) write c) answer d) make

2. Stay safe ..... you use technology.

a) when b) which c) how d) why

3. Toka, ... come to school late.

a) doesn't b) don't c) isn't d) can't

Review on Unit 4

Vocabulary

3D printer	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد
personal information	معلومات شخصية
phone charger	شاحن الهاتف
popular	محبوب/ شائع
click on the icon	ينقر على الأيقونة
instructions	تعليمات
school uniform	الزى المدرسى
keep … secret	يحافظ على سرية
kettle	غلاية
send a text message	يرسل رسالة نصية
stay safe	ابق آمنًا
take a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية
make a video call	يقوم بإجراء مكالمة فيديو
tap on the icon	يضغط على الأيقونة
mobile phone	تليفون محمول
mouse	فأرة الكمبيوتر
technology	التكنولوجيا
MP3 player	مشغل إم بى ثرى
nature	الطبيعة
whiteboard	السبورة البيضاء
password	كلمة المرور/ السر
write an email	يكتب رسالة بريد إلكترونى

Language

There is/There are:

Affirmative

- There is a printer.
- There are some boys here.

Negative

- There isn't a charger.
- There aren't any tablets.

Questions

- Is there an MP3 player?
- Are there any mobile phones?

The present continuous:

Affirmative

- She is writing an email now.
- I'm doing my homework.

Negative

- They aren't studying.
- I'm not eating now.

Questions

- What are you doing now?
- Is Ali watching TV now?

Imperative:

- Go to the shop.
- Huda, boil that water.

Negative

- Don't boil that water, Huda.
- Please, don't open the door.

Skills

Ask and answer questions about your friend:

- **A:** Are you sitting next to your best friend?
  - **B:** Yes, I am.
- **A:** Is she writing with a pen or pencil?
  - **B:** She is writing with a pencil.
- **A:** What are they doing?
  - **B:** They are watching TV.

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 4

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Rana likes ..... .
   a) biology b) technology c) science d) maths
2. She likes playing ..... .
   a) video games b) basketball c) tennis d) football
3. Rana plays on her ..... .
   a) laptop b) tablet c) TV d) computer
4. Her favourite subject is ..... .
   a) English b) maths c) social studies d) computer studies.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢

Salwa is telling Nada that she is going to the library.

Nada : Hello, Salwa. Where are you going?
Salwa : Hello, Nada. (1)..... .
Nada : (2).....?
Salwa : I'm going to the library to read a story. What about you?
Nada : (3)..... .
Salwa : Why are you going to the club?
Nada : I'm going to the club to play basketball.
Salwa : (4).....?
Nada : Yes, I'm in the school basketball team. Do you want to come with me?
Salwa : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

I love technology. It's very useful for me. Technology helps us to do our work. We use it every day. We can send messages, do researches and play games. But to stay safe online, you have to follow some important instructions. First, keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information (e.g., telephone number). Don't make friends with people you don't know online.

Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a ***parent*** or a teacher.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What should you do when you are in trouble?

.....

2. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

3. Why do you think you have to follow these rules when you are online?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. You should keep your ..... secret.
   a) text b) email c) poster d) password
5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..... .
   a) telephone b) instructions
   c) technology d) call
6. The underlined word "***parent***" means ..... .
   a) mum or dad b) uncle
   c) teacher d) mum's sister

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I will send you a/an ..... message soon. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) text b) test c) photo d) icon
2. A ..... is a small computer that you carry around. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) mouse b) mobile c) laptop d) charger
3. ..... the icon on your mobile phone. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Click b) Tap c) Look d) Make
4. Young people like to ..... a selfie with their smart phones.
   a) print b) keep c) take d) make
5. My little brother loves ....., so he spends a lot of time in the garden.
   a) nature b) future c) furniture d) culture

6. I can boil water in the ..... to make tea.

a) laptop b) kettle c) charger d) radio

7. The opposite of the word "safe" is "..... ". القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) false b) different c) dangerous d) depressed

8. She would like ..... video games.

a) play b) to play c) playing d) played

9. Ahmed is ..... a text message to his father. المنيا ٢٠٢٣

a) send B) sends c) sent d) sending

10. ..... too much TV!

a) Watch b) Not watch c) Watching d) Don't watch

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. First, putting some water in a kettle. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. Ali, didn't go out. It's raining outside. (.....)
3. What she is cooking now? (.....)
4. Can I have any water? (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

"Technology makes our life easy"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Monthly Models on Units 3&4

هذه النماذج ستساعدك فى التدرب على الاختبارات الشهرية.

November Model 1

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali is asking Amr about his favourite sports star.

Ali : Who is your favourite sports star?

Amr : (1)..... .

Ali : What sport does Mohamed Salah play?

Amr : (2)..... .

Ali : (3).....?

Amr : He plays for Liverpool Team.

Ali : (4).....?

Amr : Yes, he scores a lot of goals.

Ali : Do you want to be like him?

Amr : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A plane is very ..... . It can go at 900 km/h.
   a) tall b) long c) weak d) fast
2. Alice is the main ..... of the story.
   a) crater b) character c) adventure d) book
3. My cousin's hair is not straight. It is ..... .
   a) blond b) short c) long d) curly
4. You can ..... your mobile using a phone charger.
   a) charge b) change c) hear d) choose
5. You must keep your password ..... .
   a) easy b) famous c) secret d) known
6. You can ..... a video call to your brother in Dubai.
   a) do b) make c) send d) write

7. His father has got a white long ..... on his face.

a) bread b) board c) beard d) broad

8. ..... there a mouse next to the laptop?

a) Is b) Has c) Are d) Does

9. Hamza ..... got curly hair.

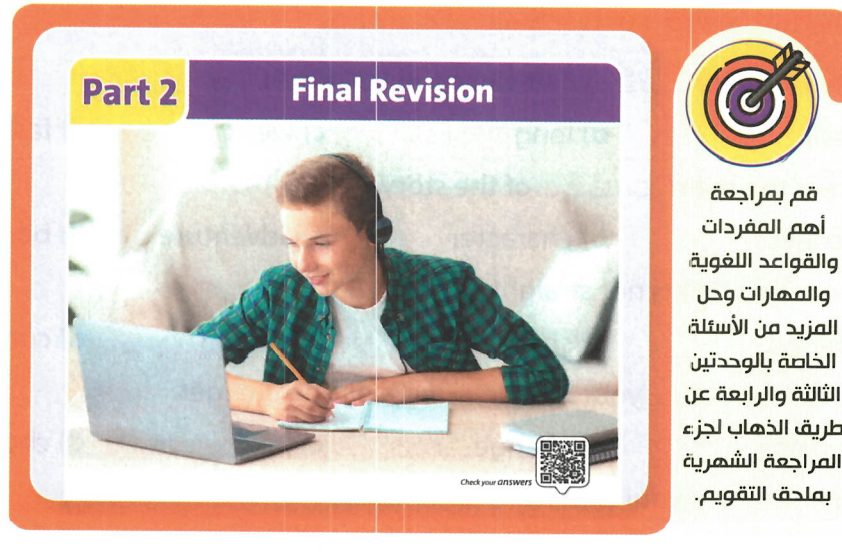
a) is b) have c) was d) has

10. At the moment, students ..... to a story.

a) listened b) are listening c) listens d) listen

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. My brother is read a book at the moment. (.....)
2. I was sitting in a cafe now. (.....)
3. Didn't talk to strangers. (.....)
4. **A:** Are there a tablet in your classroom? **B:** Yes, there is. (.....)
5. What is Adel do at the moment? (.....)



قم بمراجعة أهم المفردات والقواعد اللغوية والمهارات وحل المزيد من الأسئلة الخاصة بالوحدتين الثالثة والرابعة عن طريق الذهاب لجزء المراجعة الشهرية بملحق التقويم.

November Model 2

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I need paper for the ..... .
   a) camera b) screen c) printer d) mouse
2. The lion is a ..... animal.
   a) kind b) scary c) friendly d) worry
3. My little daughter has got a big ..... .
   a) smell b) smile c) small d) smelt
4. My grandfather has got a big ..... on his mouth.
   a) beard b) hair c) moustache d) eye
5. It's important to stay ..... online.
   a) safe b) worried c) angry d) colourful
6. You can ..... a selfie on your mobile.
   a) help b) make c) run d) take
7. ..... video games is my favourite hobby.
   a) Giving b) Playing c) Doing d) Making
8. ..... throw rubbish in the street.
   a) Never b) Doesn't c) Didn't d) Aren't
9. **A:** Can you phone me at 6:00 pm? **B:** No, I ..... .
   a) can b) doesn't c) can't d) didn't
10. My best friend ..... short, dark hair.
    a) has got b) have got c) got d) is

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Ali have got lots of books. (.....)
2. Ahmed and I has got curly hair. (.....)
3. Ola is write a paragraph at the moment. (.....)
4. There isn't some cheese. (.....)
5. Where can we meeting today? (.....)

November Model 3

21

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is asking Amir about using technology in his school.

Ahmed : Do you use technology at your school?

Amir : (1)..... . We use tablets.

Ahmed : Really! Can you use a tablet?

Amir : (2)..... .

Ahmed : (3).....?

Amir : We use tablets in all subjects.

Ahmed : (4).....?

Amir : Yes, my classroom has got a smart board.

Ahmed : Do you use mobile phones at class?

Amir : (5)..... . We can't use them.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a fast runner and a clever footballer.

Mohamed Salah has a big smile. He is quite short for a footballer. He is 1.75 metres tall. Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly hair and a beard. He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to poor people. He is very friendly and he always talks to his fans. He hasn't got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the best title for the passage?

.....

2. Who does Salah talk to?

.....

3. Do you think Salah is a great sports star?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Mohamed Salah gives money to ..... people.

a) poor b) rich

c) clean d) happy

5. "***Fast***" is the opposite of ..... .

a) short b) weak

c) slow d) friendly

6. Mohamed Salah has got ..... hair.

a) curly b) white

c) straight d) blond

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Keeps your password secret. (.....)
2. There aren't some books. (.....)
3. Does she like watch TV? (.....)
4. Has your father get a beard? (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

"Your favourite sports star"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 5

Holidays

Objectives of the unit

Reading	A description of a holiday; an advertisement for learning English
Writing	An advertisement for a holiday; an email about a holiday
Listening	A conversation about a holiday; a discussion about a day out
Speaking	Describing a place; talking about a holiday; responding to news
Language	The past simple
Values	Respect
Issues	Environmental awareness

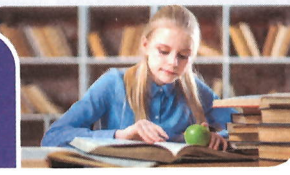
Tapescripts

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 44 - 47 | WB pages 102 & 103

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bat (n)	خفاش	make a sandcastle	يصنع قلعة رملية
cave (n)	كهف	ride a bike	يركب دراجة
climb a mountain	يتسلق جبلًا	river (n)	نهر
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	see a camel	يرى جملًا
desert (n)	صحراء	sleep in a tent	ينام فى خيمة
forest (n)	غابة	swim in the lake	يسبح فى البحيرة
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة خلوية	visit a family	يزور أسرة
jungle (n)	أدغال/غابة كثيفة الأشجار	waterfall (n)	شلال

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

dark (adj)	مظلم	museum (n)	متحف
echo (n)	صدى الصوت	quiz (n)	اختبار مصغر
fantastic (adj)	رائع	turn (n)	دور
hotel (n)	فندق	warm (adj)	دافئ
map (n)	خريطة	weather (n)	طقس

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a place with	مكان به	on the beach	على الشاطئ/البلاج
call out	ينادى	ride on a camel	يركب جملًا
frightened of	خائف من	search for	يبحث عن
in the rocks	فى الصخور	think of	يفكر فى

Check Point

Choose and complete: with – warm – hotel – mountains

1. The weather is ..... today.
2. Climbing ..... is a dangerous sport.
3. The beach is a place ..... a lot of sand and water .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية وحروف الجر.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten	ride	يركب	rode	ridden
have/has	يملك/لديه	had	had	see	يرى	saw	seen
hear	يسمع	heard	heard	speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
get into/in	يدخل فى	go out of	يخرج من
quiet	هادئ	noisy	صاخب

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 called / is called — التى تُسمى/ الذى يُسمى / يُسمى

- We visited a city called Marrakesh.
- My friend is called Mohammed.

2 would ('d) like to + inf. — يود أن

- Where would you like to **go**?
- I'd like to **go** to the beach.

3 when — عندما (للوقت)

- When I was eight, I went to Siwa.

4 where — حيث (للمكان)

- A forest is a place where there are lots of trees.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'd like ..... Al Azhar Park in Cairo.
   a) visit b) visiting c) to visit d) to visiting
2. My teacher ..... Mohammed is from Giza.
   a) calling b) called c) is called d) calls
3. We will visit the village ..... my grandfather was born.
   a) which b) that c) where d) when

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Countries/ Cities/ Places — بلاد/ مدن/ أماكن

Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	Marrakesh	مدينة مراكش (بالمغرب)
Djara cave	كهف الجارة	Morocco	دولة المغرب
Egypt	مصر	Siwa	واحة سيوة
Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة	the Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
get into	يدخل فى	enter	يدخل
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	لذيذ
fantastic	مدهش	amazing	مدهش

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
frighten (v)	يخيف	-ed		تحول الفعل لصفة		frightened (adj)	خائف

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
desert	صحراء	dessert	حلوى
quiet	هادئ	quite	إلى حد ما
hear	يسمع	here	هنا
bat	خفاش	boat	قارب

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

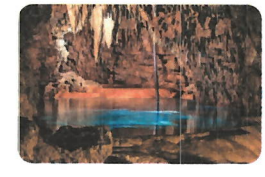
Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- A place with a lot of sand but no water. What is it?

Listen to Taha and his sister playing a game. Can you guess the places?

SB page 45



Taha Guess[1] where I am, Sara. I'm in a place where there are a lot of trees.

Sara Are there monkeys in the trees?

Taha No. It's very dark and quiet.

Sara Are you in a forest[2]?

Taha Yes, I am!

Sara My turn! I'm in a place with a lot of sand[3].

Taha I know! You're in the desert[4].

Sara No, I'm not. There isn't any water in the desert. There's a lot of water in my place.

Taha You're on the beach[5]!

Sara That's right.

Taha Now, I'm in a dark place. When I speak, I can hear my words again and again. Listen. (calls out with echo) Hello! (echo comes twice)

Sara That's easy. You're in a cave[6]! Can you see any bats[7]?

Taha No, I can't. It's very dark in here!

(1) يخمن
(2) غابة / أدغال
(3) رمال
(4) الصحراء
(5) الشاطئ
(6) كهف
(7) خفافيش

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

desert /dezərt/ cave /keɪv/ echo /ekoʊ/

Post-listening question:

- Have you ever been in a cave? If yes, how did you feel?

Pre-reading question:

- How was your last summer holiday?

Look and read. Match the photos with the descriptions: *SB page 46*

My holiday photos

1. ☐ Last summer, when the weather was hot, we went to the beach near my home in Hurghada. Mariam made this sandcastle (1). There was a cave in the rocks. But Mariam didn't want to go into the cave (2) because she was frightened!

(1) يصنع قلعة رملية
(2) يدخل الكهف
(3) يقوم بنزهة خلوية
(4) يتسلق جبلًا
(5) ينام فى خيمة

2. ☐ In October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic (3) in Al Azhar Park. We ate delicious food. Then we played games and Ali rode his bike.

3. ☐ When I was eight, we went to Siwa. We swam in the lake, and climbed the mountain (4). We saw camels and slept in a tent (5) in the desert. It was my favourite holiday!

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

sandcastle /ˈsænd.kɑːsəl/
frightened /fraɪtənd/
delicious /dɪlɪʃəs/

Post-reading questions:

1. When did they visit their uncle?
2. What activities did they do at Siwa?

Pre-reading question:

- Where did you go last summer?

Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

WB page 103

Hi Eman,

Last summer, my family **had** a fantastic holiday in Morocco. We **visited** a big beach and then we **slept** in a nice hotel. We **didn't swim** in the sea. It **wasn't** very warm! But I **rode** on a camel. That **was** fun. We **visited** a city called Marrakesh, too, and we **went** to a museum. We also **ate** some delicious food.

Write soon.

Hana

Post-reading question:

- What's this email about?

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Morocco /mə'rɒkəʊ/

Marrakesh /mə'rækɛʃ/

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... is very high and there's lots of water in it. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
   a) beach b) cave c) lake d) waterfall
2. "....." is a place inside the mountain. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) Cave b) River c) Lake d) Waterfall
3. The ..... is my favourite place to go in summer to swim. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) cave b) mountain c) beach d) desert
4. Children like to build ..... on the beach. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) mountains b) lakes c) waterfalls d) sandcastles
5. A ..... is a tropical forest with lots of trees and plants. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) desert b) waterfall c) cave d) jungle
6. People don't like to go ..... caves because they are dark.
   a) out of b) by c) for d) into
7. We usually ..... a picnic at the weekend.
   a) swim b) find c) have d) make
8. Most children like playing ..... the beach.
   a) of b) for c) on d) to
9. Last summer, the ..... was very hot.
   a) sandcastle b) weather c) picnic d) game
10. Mariam didn't want to go into the cave because she was .....! القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) frightened b) delicious c) dark d) quiet
11. We sleep in tents when we go to the ..... .
    a) villa b) hotel c) flat d) desert
12. We had an English ..... every Sunday, so I have to study hard every day.
    a) quiz b) camp c) taste d) ride
13. Boys like to ..... their bikes on holidays.
    a) ride b) build c) see d) make

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother makes ..... food. We all like it. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) bad b) delicious c) unknown d) sad
2. When we went camping, my brother ..... a very high mountain. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   a) climbed b) chopped c) rode d) bought
3. We went camping in the desert and slept in a ..... there. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) tent b) lake c) river d) kitchen
4. There are a lot of trees in the ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) jug b) sky c) jungle d) weather
5. There isn't any water in the ..... .
   a) river b) desert c) lake d) sea
6. Our garden is a good place ..... a lot of trees.
   a) with b) for c) by d) to
7. A ..... is a small animal like a mouse with wings that flies around at night.
   a) boat b) bat c) bait d) bite
8. It's very ..... and quiet in the forest. I can't see anything.
   a) tasty b) delicious c) safe d) dark
9. I saw some boys swimming in the ..... .
   a) mountain b) forest c) lake d) desert
10. Many people like to ..... on camels.
    a) ride b) drive c) climb d) swim
11. It was my favourite holiday! It was ..... .
    a) dark b) fantastic c) terrible d) bad
12. I'm trying to find the park on the ..... .
    a) picnic b) map c) desert d) cave

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

The Past Simple Tense — زمن الماضى البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

- We use the past simple tense to talk about actions that started and ended in the past.

- نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط لنتحدث عن فعل حدث فى الماضى وانتهى أو حدثين متتابعين فى الماضى.

- I visited my uncle yesterday.

1 Verb "to be":

Affirmative الإثبات

I / He / She / It	was	frightened. / hungry. / a nurse. / big.
We / You / They	were	early. / at school. / quiet.

Negative النفى

I / He / She / It	wasn't	sad. / thirsty. / a teacher. / small.
We / You / They	weren't	late. / at home. / noisy.

wasn't = was not

weren't = were not

Yes/No Questions: السؤال بمعنى هل:

+ Affirmative	They were happy.	She was frightened.
? Question	Were they happy?	Was she frightened?

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. There are a lot of people on the beach last holiday. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (were) لوجود (last) وهى تدل على الماضى.

2. Ali didn't at the park last Monday. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (wasn't) لأنه لا يوجد فعل فى المصدر.

2 Regular & Irregular verbs:

Affirmative
الإثبات

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل

- I arrived late for school.

لاحظ تنقسم الأفعال إلى قسمين:

1 Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

- تتكون بإضافة (d/ ed/ ied) للمصدر:

live ▸ lived
visit ▸ visited
study ▸ studied

2 Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

- يتغير فيها شكل الفعل وليس لها قاعدة محددة:

eat ▸ ate
buy ▸ bought
take ▸ took

Key words
الكلمات الدالة

- فى الماضى in the past - منذ ... ago - ... الماضى last - أمس (yesterday)
سنة فى الماضى + in (in 2010)

- I **bought** this car in 2015. - We **visited** Luxor 2 years ago.

Negative
النفى

- نضع (didn't) بين الفاعل والمصدر.

Subject ▸ did not (didn't) + **inf.** + ...

- You didn't **buy** a new notebook.

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She don't go to school yesterday. (.....)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (didn't) لوجود كلمة (yesterday) الدالة على الماضى البسيط.

2. I watched a scary movie next weekend. (.....)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (last) لأن فعل الجملة (watched) فى الماضى.

3. Salma didn't visited her aunt last Friday. (.....)
- الاجابة الصحيحة (visit) لأن (didn't) يتبعها مصدر الفعل.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I ..... to Aswan last winter. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) went b) go c) goes d) going
2. ..... your friends ready for the exam last week? الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Do b) Did c) Does d) Were
3. Yesterday, we didn't ..... our lessons. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) studied b) study c) studying d) studies
4. Mona ..... to school yesterday because she was ill. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢
   a) not come b) doesn't come c) don't come d) didn't come
5. We camped in the forest and ..... in a tent. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
   a) sleep b) sleeps c) slept d) sleeping
6. When I ..... eight, we went to Siwa.
   a) was b) am c) is d) are
7. We ..... swim in the sea. It wasn't very warm.
   a) aren't b) weren't c) didn't d) don't
8. Sally ..... happy at the party yesterday.
   a) has b) is c) was d) were
9. My grandmother ..... a nurse. She was a doctor.
   a) wasn't b) didn't c) isn't d) hasn't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He visit his friends yesterday. (.....) بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
2. Suzy doesn't like swimming when she was young. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. They travelled by car. They walked. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
4. I rode on a camel. That is fun. (.....) الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
5. Rana and Mayada didn't at school yesterday. (.....)
6. They didn't climbed the tree. (.....)

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Last week, we ..... them some presents. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) give b) gives c) gave d) giving
2. He didn't ..... the prize last week.
   a) win b) won c) winning d) wins
3. We ..... Port Said last year. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) visit b) visited c) visiting d) visits
4. He ..... at home last week. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) were b) had c) was d) is
5. She ..... in Alexandria when she was a little girl. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
   a) lives b) lived c) living d) is living
6. Last summer, the weather ..... hot.
   a) was b) were c) is d) are
7. My family ..... a fantastic holiday in Morocco last summer.
   a) are having b) having c) have d) had
8. I ..... Pizza for dinner last night. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) eat b) eating c) ate d) eaten
9. We ..... in the sea because it was too cold.
   a) didn't swim b) swam c) don't swim d) swim

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. They study for two hours last night. (.....) الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
2. They don't visit their uncle a week ago. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. Ali didn't at school yesterday. (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
4. We went to the theatre next week. (.....) الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
5. Were you wear your jacket last night? (.....) الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
6. We played games and rides bikes. (.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your last weekend. كيف تكتب عن عطلتك الأسبوعية الماضية.

- Last weekend, I went to (المكان).
- I went with (الشخص / الأشخاص).
- We went by (الوسيلة).
- We (الأنشطة التى قمتم بها).
- We didn't (الأنشطة التى لم نقم بها).
- It was a fantastic holiday.

Writing tips

Review your paragraph for spelling and grammar mistakes.
راجع الأخطاء الإملائية وأخطاء القواعد فى فقرتك.

Example

Your last holiday

I like travelling very much. I visited many places around Egypt. Last holiday, I went to Hurghada. It's a beautiful city by the beach. There's a lot to do and see there. I went with my family. We went by bus. It is a beautiful place. We did many activities there. We swam in the sea and made sandcastles. We didn't see camels there. We ate delicious food, then we played games. My brother rode his bike. We left the place late at night. We enjoyed our time very much. It was a fantastic holiday.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Last weekend"

Last weekend, I went to .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. When did Ragab travel to Aswan?
   a) Last week. b) Last month.
   c) Last winter. d) Last summer.
2. Who did Ragab travel with?
   a) His friends. b) His class.
   c) His relatives. d) His family.
3. How did Ragab travel?
   a) By train. b) By bus.
   c) By car. d) By plane.
4. What did Ragab buy from shops?
   a) Tickets. b) Souvenirs.
   c) Food. d) Fruit.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I can hear my words again and again inside a ..... .
   a) river b) lake c) forest d) cave
2. Can you sleep in a ..... in the desert? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) villa b) hotel c) flat d) tent
3. I ..... on a camel in the forest when we had a picnic there.
   a) drove b) rode c) went d) flew
4. I can't climb this ..... . It's very high. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) forest b) mountain c) street d) jungle
5. You can enjoy sitting on the ..... by the sea. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٠
   a) jungle b) beach c) mountain d) river
6. There's a lot of ..... in the desert. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٠
   a) sand b) castles c) water d) plants
7. A ..... is a place where water falls from a high place. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢
   a) waterwheel b) waterfall c) lake d) sea

8. She didn't ..... to the beach yesterday. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

a) goes b) went c) gone d) go

9. ..... you and your friends worried before the last exam?

a) Was b) Are c) Were d) Did

10. When we arrived, it ..... very windy. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

a) is b) was c) be d) were

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Mona went to the zoo next week. (.....) كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٠
2. Sara doesn't buy a camera yesterday. (.....)
3. When I am eight, I went to London. (.....)
4. I eat fish for lunch yesterday. (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

"A trip you made"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. When I speak, I can hear my words again and again. It's a/an ..... .

a) cave b) echo c) mountain d) jungle

2. It's not good to ..... your friends loudly in the street.

a) call out b) search for c) think of d) swim in

3. My uncle ..... Nabil is a doctor.

a) calls b) calling c) called d) is called

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 48 - 50 | WB pages 104 & 105

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

camp (ed) (v)	يعسكر/يخيم	holiday flat (n)	شقة العطلة
castle (n)	قلعة	language school (n)	مدرسة لغات
climb up (ed) (v)	يصعد	student (n)	طالب
exciting (adj)	مثير	souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية
holiday courses (n)	دورات فى فترة الإجازة	view (n)	منظر طبيعى

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

dolphin (n)	دولفين	flag (n)	علَم
enjoy (ed) (v)	يستمتع بـ	wonderful (adj)	رائع

Check Point

Choose and complete: wonderful – castle – souvenirs – student

1. I visited the ..... . It is very ancient.
2. We spent a ..... time in Alexandria last summer.
3. I bought some ..... from Khan El-Khalili.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do >	a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع	make >	an advertisement	يقوم بعمل إعلان
	activities	يقوم بأنشطة		a list	يقوم بعمل قائمة
have >	a holiday/time	يقضى إجازة/وقتًا	ride >	a horse	يركب حصانًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

advertisement for	إعلان لـ	for a holiday	لقضاء عطلة
a ride on	رحلة على	get to	يصل إلى
by the lake/beach	بجوار البحيرة/الشاطئ	go on holiday	يذهب فى إجازة
find out	يكتشف	in Arabic	باللغة العربية

Check Point

Choose and complete: do – by – ride – for

1. We can ..... many activities in summer.
2. I read an advertisement ..... a good job.
3. My father bought a new flat ..... the beach.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
learn	يتعلم	learnt	learnt
show	يعرض/ يبين	showed	shown

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
stay	يقيم	leave	يترك/يغادر
wonderful	رائع	terrible	فظيع/سيئ جدًا

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

Subject + first/last + past simple — أول/آخر مرة ...

- When I first **came** to the language school, I was not very good at English.
- I last **saw** my uncle was three days ago.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions التعريفات

camp	يخيم/يعسكر	sleep for a time in a tent[1]
castle	قلعة	a big, strong building[2] from the past
dolphin	دولفين	a friendly sea animal
holiday flat	شقة العطلة	a place to stay for a holiday
souvenir	هدية تذكارية	something you buy to remember[3] a holiday
view	منظر طبيعى	what you can see from a place

(1) خيمة

(2) مبنى

(3) يتذكر

Places أماكن

England	إنجلترا	London	لندن
France	فرنسا	the Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة
Germany	ألمانيا	the London Eye	عجلة لندن (معلم سياحى)
Jordan	الأردن	Windsor Castle	قلعة وندسور

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
interesting	شيق	exciting	مثير
wonderful	رائع	amazing/fantastic	مذهل/رائع

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
advertise (v)	يعلن	-ment		تحول الفعل لاسم		advertisement (n)	إعلان
wonder (v)	يتعجب	-ful		تحول الفعل لصفة		wonderful (adj)	رائع

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
camp	معسكر	comp	مشط
view	منظر طبيعى	review	مقال نقدى
flat	شقة	flag	علم

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

SB page 48

Pre-listening question:

- Where did you go last holiday?

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 1.

Hatem Hi, Yunis! How was your holiday[1]?

Yunis Hi, Hatem! It was great, thanks!

Hatem Where did you go?

Yunis I went to Jordan[2] by plane.

Hatem Wow! Did you visit your family there?

Yunis No, we stayed in a holiday flat[3] by the beach. We had a wonderful view[4] from the windows. Every morning, I saw dolphins[5] in the sea.

Hatem Did you swim in the sea?

Yunis Yes, we did. We swam every day! We used a map and read a book about Jordan, and we visited a lot of famous places. We went to this old castle[6]. Look, here's a picture of it on my phone.

Hatem How did you get to the castle?

Yunis We climbed up the mountain!

Hatem Did you buy any souvenirs?

Yunis Yes, I did. I bought this small souvenir[7] for you.

Hatem Oh, how interesting! Egypt's flag[8] is also red, white and black. Jordan's flag has another colour–green, too. Thanks, Yunis!

(1) إجازة/عطلة
(2) الأردن
(3) شقة العطلة
(4) منظر
(5) دولفين
(6) قلعة
(7) هدية تذكارية
(8) عَلم

Post-listening question:

- Where would you like to go next holiday?

Note: تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

castle /kɑːsəl/ souvenir /suːvənɪəʳ/

Pre-reading question:

- What activities do you do on holiday?

Read the text quickly and answer the questions in pairs. *SB page 50*

Learn English in London!

(1) دورات تدريبية
(2) مدرسة لغات
(3) قلعة وندسور
(4) ملكة
(5) عجلة لندن
(6) يستمتع بـ

- Our students come from all around the world to study and learn in this exciting city.
- Holiday courses[1] are for one, two or three weeks.

I had a wonderful time at the language school[2]! I was there for two weeks. It was nice to meet students from different countries.

My favourite place was Windsor Castle[3]. We went there by train. We walked all around the castle, but we did not see the Queen[4]!

Mona, Egypt

I learnt English and had a really great holiday at the same time! London's shops are fantastic. I bought a lot of souvenirs. My favourite activity was a ride on the London Eye[5], because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top.

Laura, France

When I first came to the language school, I was not very good at English. But the teachers helped me a lot. The lessons were fun, and for homework we did interesting projects. I enjoyed[6] speaking English!

Jurgen, Germany

Post-reading questions:

1. Why do you think Mona didn't see the Queen?
2. Why did Laura like the ride on the London Eye?
3. How were Jurgen's lessons?

Complete the email with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

WB page 105

Hi Ali,

Last summer, I **travelled** to Egypt because I wanted to learn Arabic. I **went** to a language school in Cairo. I **had** a wonderful time. I **was** there for two weeks. The people in Cairo **were** very friendly. Now, I have many new friends.

When I first went to the language school, I **wasn't** very good at Arabic. But the teachers **helped** me, and the lessons **were** fun. Now, I can talk to my new friends in Arabic!

Cairo's shops are fantastic. I **bought** lots of souvenirs. My favourite place was the Cairo Tower. I **enjoyed** the view of the city from the top. What did you do last summer?

Write soon and tell me.
Andy, England

Project

- Work in groups. Find out which holiday activities people can do in Egypt. Make a list.

قم بالعمل فى مجموعة. قم باكتشاف أنشطة الإجازة التى يمكن للناس ممارستها فى مصر. قم بعمل قائمة.

- Work in pairs. Make an advertisement for a holiday in Egypt.

قم بالعمل الثنائى. قم بعمل إعلان عن إجازة فى مصر.

1. Choose one activity you can do in Egypt. اختر نشاطًا تستطيع فعله فى مصر.
2. Design and write an online advertisement and add pictures.

صمم واكتب إعلانًا وصورًا عبر الإنترنت.

3. Show your advertisement to the class and talk about it.

اعرض إعلانك على الفصل وتحدث عنه.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲Remembering ▲Understanding ▲Applying ▲Analysing ▲Evaluating ▲Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There was a beautiful ..... of the river from the top. قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) view b) review c) preview d) viewing
2. I bought many ..... for my friends from Paris. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) souvenirs b) caves c) menu d) hobbies
3. When we went camping, my brother ..... up a very high mountain. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   a) bought b) chopped c) rode d) climbed
4. A dolphin is a friendly ..... animal. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) wild b) land c) sea d) plant
5. I ..... a horse in the forest when we had a picnic there. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
   a) drove b) rode c) went d) flew
6. Children like ..... because they can play and enjoy themselves.
   a) holidays b) courses c) advertisements d) flats
7. We went to Jordan and ..... in a nice hotel.
   a) lived b) enjoyed c) left d) stayed
8. Tourists like to visit ..... places in a country.
   a) unfriendly b) famous c) bad d) boring
9. We visited our uncle who lives ..... the beach in Alexandria.
   a) to b) for c) by d) of
10. Our new flat is ..... . It's cool.
    a) wonderful b) boring c) bad d) ugly
11. When we went to Jordan, we took a ..... to know every place there.
    a) course b) flat c) flag d) map
12. We stay in a holiday ..... when we travel to Hurghada.
    a) activity b) flat c) course d) mountain
13. Egypt's ..... is red, white and black.
    a) flat b) mountain c) flag d) map

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is a big, strong building from the past. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) castle b) hotel c) souvenir d) desert
2. Most teachers ask us to ..... projects for homework.
   a) do b) make c) take d) see
3. Which holiday ..... can people do in Egypt? الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) activities b) views c) souvenirs d) projects
4. Some slow learners take summer ..... to be good at school subjects. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   a) holidays b) camps c) views d) courses
5. You can search for a job in ..... in newspapers. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   a) adventures b) advertisements c) flats d) technology
6. I bought many ..... for my friends from Paris. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) souvenirs b) caves c) menu d) hobbies
7. ..... should study their lessons well to be good at them.
   a) Courses b) Visitors c) Students d) Parents
8. London is a/an ..... city. Lots of people like to visit it.
   a) boring b) exciting c) bad d) ugly
9. He ..... a great time at Al Azhar Park.
   a) had b) made c) rode d) did
10. Basmala is good at English because she goes to a/an ..... school.
    a) course b) activity c) language d) subject
11. I decided to buy something to ..... that holiday.
    a) have b) stay c) remind d) remember
12. My favourite activity was a ride ..... the London Eye.
    a) for b) at c) in d) on

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

The Past Simple Tense Questions — الأسئلة فى زمن الماضى البسيط

Question السؤال

1 Yes/No questions:

Did + subject + **inf.** ...?

- **A:** Did you **watch** TV last night?
- **B:** Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

Was/Were + subject + ...?

- **A:** Was he at the cinema last week?
  B: Yes, he was. **B:** No, he wasn't.
- **A:** Were they excited about the trip?
  B: Yes, they were. **B:** No, they weren't.

2 Wh- questions:

Q. word (أداة استفهام) ▶ did + subject + **inf.** ...?

- **A:** What time did you **go** to bed?
- **B:** I went to bed at 10 o'clock.

Q. word (أداة استفهام) ▶ was/were + subject + ...?

- **A:** Where were you yesterday?
- **B:** I was at the cinema with my friends.

لاحظ

عند السؤال عن الفاعل فى الماضى البسيط لا نستخدم الفعل المساعد (did) بل نستخدم الماضى من الفعل الأساسى:

- Who helped you yesterday? - My mother helped me.

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. How did you travelled to Paris? (.....)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (travel) لوجود كلمة (did) التى يأتى بعدها الفعل فى المصدر.
2. Where does he last week? (.....)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (was) لوجود كلمة last الدالة على الماضى وعدم وجود فعل فى المصدر والفاعل مفرد.
3. Did you in London two days ago? (.....)
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (were) لوجود كلمة ago الدالة على الماضى وعدم وجود فعل فى المصدر والفاعل جمع.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where did you go on holiday ..... summer? الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) last b) next c) least d) the following
2. **A:** When ..... she return to Cairo? **B:** Last Friday. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) does b) did c) do d) don't
3. Who ..... Hassan see in the park last Tuesday? الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) does b) did c) has d) have
4. Did Hany ..... a mountain last year? المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) climbing b) climb c) climbed d) climbs
5. ..... you ready for the exam yesterday? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) Do b) Did c) Was d) Were
6. How ..... your last holiday?
   a) was b) did c) is d) does
7. **A:** Where did you go? **B:** I ..... to Jordon.
   a) go b) goes c) going d) went
8. **A:** Did you watch TV? **B:** Yes, I ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) don't b) do c) didn't d) did
9. What did you ..... for dinner last night? الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) eat b) ate c) eats d) eating
10. **A:** Did you visit your family there? **B:** No, we ..... .
    a) did b) was c) didn't d) wasn't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Which musical instrument did you played? (.....)
2. Who did you saw last Monday? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. Did you and your family staying in a hotel? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
4. Where do you go last week? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
5. What do you have for breakfast yesterday? (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
6. Did you at Alexandria last week? (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٢

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Asking and answering questions about your last holiday

السؤال والإجابة عن إجازتك الماضية

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
Where did you go on holiday?	أين ذهبت فى الإجازة؟	I went to Alexandria.	ذهبت إلى الإسكندرية.
Did you swim in the sea?	هل قمت بالسباحة فى البحر؟	Yes, I did. I saw a dolphin too, and I swam with it.	نعم. ورأيت دولفينًا أيضًا وقمت بالسباحة معه.
What food did you eat?	ما الطعام الذى أكلته؟	I ate a lot of fish.	أكلت الكثير من السمك.

online

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

Ahmed and Ibrahim are talking about the summer holiday he spent in Alexandria.

Ahmed : Did you go to Alexandria on holiday?
Ibrahim : Yes, I did.
Ahmed : (1).....?
Ibrahim : Yes, I did. I saw a dolphin, too.
Ahmed : (2).....?
Ibrahim : I ate fish.
Ahmed : Is fish cheap or expensive there?
Ibrahim : (3)..... .
Ahmed : Did you have a good time there?
Ibrahim : (4)..... .
Ahmed : When did you come back?
Ibrahim : (5)..... .

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your summer holiday

كيفية الكتابة عن إجازتك الصيفية

- Last summer, the weather was (حالة الطقس).
- We went to (المكان).
- It's a/an (صف المكان) place.
- We stayed in a hotel. The hotel was near the beach.
- We went to the beach. I (الأفعال التى قمت بها على الشاطئ).
- My sister/brother (الأنشطة التى قام بها).
- We had a wonderful time there.

Writing tips

Check your paragraph for spelling and grammar.

- تحقق من القواعد اللغوية أو من عدم وجود أخطاء لغوية فى فقرتك.

Example

What you did last summer

Last summer, the weather was very hot. Our father decided to take us to a nice place to have a wonderful time. We thought of lots of places, but we decided to go to Marsa Matrouh. It's a quiet and fantastic place. We stayed in a comfortable hotel. It was near the beach, so we didn't walk too long. We spent a good time on the beach. My little sister made a sandcastle. I swam in the sea whose water was very clean. My mother made us delicious food. My father and mother liked sitting on the beach. My sister and I played with a ball on the beach. We stayed for two weeks there. We enjoyed our time a lot.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"My summer holiday"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

هذا التدريب عبارة عن أسئلة تراكمية تهدف لقياس مدى استيعابك للدرسين.

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer, I had a holiday course in English in the exciting city of London. I had a wonderful time at the language school. I was there for two weeks. It was nice to meet students from different countries. My favourite place was Windsor Castle, but I did not see the Queen. I learnt English and had a really great holiday at the same time! London's shops were fantastic and I bought a lot of souvenirs. My favourite activity was a ride on the London Eye because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top. It was really a wonderful visit.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. When did the writer go to London? .....
2. What is the best title for this text? .....
3. Do you think the writer enjoyed the visit? Why/ Why not? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The writer bought a lot of ..... from London's shops.
   a) castles b) eyes c) souvenirs d) shops
5. The opposite of the underlined word "fantastic" is ..... .
   a) wonderful b) amazing c) exciting d) terrible
6. The underlined word "there" refers to ..... .
   a) London b) English c) the Castle d) holiday

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Students ..... many activities at their schools.
   a) do b) make c) write d) ride
2. I had a summer course and ..... English well.
   a) had b) made c) learnt d) taught
3. Tourists buy ..... before they go back to their countries. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) views b) dolphins c) souvenirs d) castles
4. I like English very much and I ..... speaking it.
   a) hate b) enjoy c) leave d) stay
5. My children like to go ..... a holiday to Hurghada.
   a) on b) in c) at d) about

6. I went to the desert and ..... a horse there.
a) did b) made c) rode d) climbed

7. A ..... is an old building from the past.
a) flag b) view c) souvenir d) castle

8. What did Nader ..... in his office yesterday? كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
a) found b) find c) finds d) finding

9. ..... Sally at home last Friday?
a) Was b) Did c) Were d) Does

10. ..... Ahmed and Sami play tennis yesterday? البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
a) Were b) Are c) Did d) Was

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What did Younis see and did there? (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
2. Where did she last summer? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. Where did Magdy spent the weekend? (.....) الغربية ٢٠٢٢
4. Do you go on holiday last week? (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"An English course in London"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. How did you ..... the castle?
a) walk b) arrive c) get to d) go

2. I have two friends from England. I talk to them ..... English.
a) in b) at c) by d) with

3. Who ..... with you yesterday?
a) goes b) didn't go c) go d) going

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 51 - 53 | WB pages 106 - 108

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

busy (adj)	مزدحم	postcard (n)	بطاقة بريدية
continue (d) (v)	يستمر	sign (n)	لافتة
light (n)	ضوء/مصباح	snails (n)	قواقع
pass (ed) (v)	يمر/ يجتاز	tourist (n)	سائح

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

bath time (n)	وقت الاستحمام	response (n)	رد فعل/استجابة
emotion (n)	شعور/عاطفة	theatre (n)	مسرح
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	ticket (n)	تذكرة
play (n)	مسرحية	tired (adj)	متعب/مرهق

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

be > back	يعود/يرجع	go to > sleep	يذهب للنوم
do > a journey	يقوم برحلة	have > a view of	يلقى نظرة على
follow > rules	يتبع القواعد	have > time	لديه وقت

Prepositions — حروف الجر

for a holiday	لقضاء إجازة	go on a boat trip	يذهب فى رحلة بالقارب
for example	على سبيل المثال	in bed	فى السرير
get on	يركب على	on the train	فى القطار
go in water	ينزل فى الماء	on TV	فى التلفزيون

Check Point

Choose and complete: for – theatre – light – tickets

1. We can see plays and shows at the ..... .
2. We can't enter the cinema without ..... .
3. My family went to Hurghada ..... a holiday.

يهدف هذا التدريب لاختبار فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
fall	يقع/يسقط	fell	fallen
leave	يترك/يغادر	left	left

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
closed	مغلق	open	مفتوح
lose	يخسر	win	يفوز/يكسب

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Famous Places أماكن مشهورة

Australia	أستراليا	the Louvre	متحف اللوفر
Canada	كندا	the Nile	النيل
Luxembourg Gardens	حدائق لكسمبورج	the River Seine	نهر السين
Ramses Station	محطة رمسيس	the Science Museum	متحف العلوم
the Eiffel Tower	برج إيفل	the Valley of the Kings	وادى الملوك

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
closed	مغلق	locked	مغلق
pass	يمر/يجتاز	succeed	ينجح

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
tour (n)	جولة	-ist		تحول الاسم لاسم فاعل		tourist (n)	سائح
wind (n)	الرياح	-y		تحول الاسم لصفة		windy (adj)	كثير الرياح

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- How was your last holiday?

Listen. What ate Mazin's ice cream? *SB page 51*

Man What did you do yesterday, Mazin?

Mazin I went to the zoo.

Man Oh, that's interesting[1]! Did you enjoy the day?

Mazin No, I didn't.

Man Oh, dear[2]. Why not?

Mazin Well, first we went to see the monkeys. But they were all very tired. I think they were in bed.

Man What a pity[3]! So you didn't see them?

Mazin No, we didn't. Then, we went into a cave to see the bats. But it was dark, and I didn't see anything.

Man What did you do next?

Mazin Then, we bought an ice cream and went to see the elephants. It was bath time for them.

Man Wow! How exciting[4]!

Mazin Yes, I enjoyed that. But then something bad happened.

Man Oh, no[5]! What happened?

Mazin An elephant ate my ice cream!

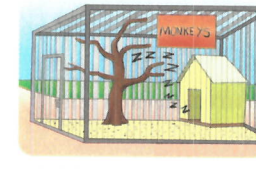
(1) ذلك شيق!

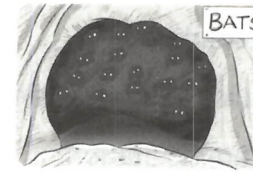
(2) يا للهول!/ يا إلهى!

(3) يا للأسف!

(4) كم هو مثير!

(5) أوه لا!/ يا إلهى!





Post-listening questions:

1. Why do you think Mazin didn't see the bats?
2. If you were Mazin, how would you feel when the elephant ate your ice cream?

Pre-reading question:

- Do you think Paris is a great city for a holiday? Why/ Why not?

Read Fatma's email. SB page 52

From : Fatma
To : Azza
Subject : My holiday

Hi, Azza!

I am back from my holiday in Paris. I had a wonderful time! Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails[1]!

One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic in the Luxembourg Gardens. We also went on a boat on the River Seine. What a pity! We did not have time to go to the Science Museum. I also wanted to see the art[2] at the Louvre, but it was closed.

Near our hotel, there was a busy market. I bought a T-shirt and some postcards[3]. I also bought you a souvenir. It is a very small Eiffel Tower! You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light[4] on the top.

See you soon!
Fatma

(1) قواقع
(2) الفن/الرسم
(3) بطاقات بريدية
(4) ضوء/مصباح

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

snail /sneɪl
Luxembourg/ /ˈlʌksəmˌbɜːg/
Seine /seɪn/
Eiffel /ˈaɪfəl/

Post-reading question:

- If you were Fatma, would you enjoy your holiday? Give reasons.

Pre-reading question: - Do you like travelling by train?

Put the email into the correct order. *WB page 107*

Hi Fady,

Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station, then we got on the train. There were people from many countries on the train, for example, England and Australia.

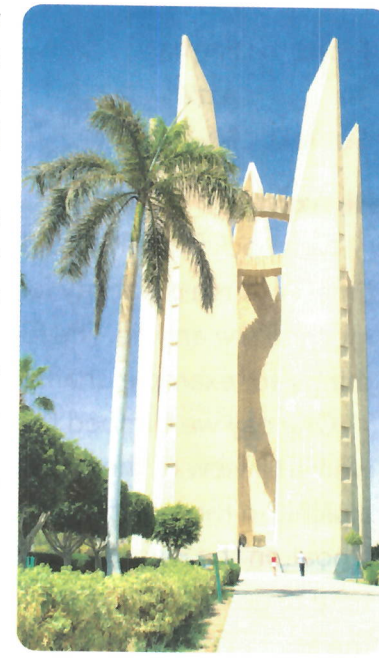
The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock, and soon we passed Giza. I enjoyed the view from the window and I saw the Nile. There were lots of boats. It was beautiful.

We arrived at Luxor at a quarter past six. Many tourists left the train here. They wanted to see the Valley of the Kings!

The train continued to Aswan. We arrived there at ten o'clock. My uncle was there to meet us! It was a wonderful journey.

See you soon!

Mazin



Post-reading question:

- How did Mazin travel to Aswan?

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Australia /ɒˈstreɪlɪə/ station /steɪʃən/

Values

Look at these **signs**. What do they mean?

انظر إلى الإشارات. ماذا تعنى؟

1. Why do places have these rules for tourists? لماذا تضع الأماكن هذه القواعد للسائحين؟
2. Can you think of any more rules for tourists? هل يمكنك التفكير فى قواعد أكثر للسائحين؟

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This ..... says, "Don't walk on the grass". القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) signal b) list c) sign d) song
2. What school ..... should we follow? البحيرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) games b) rules c) gates d) classes
3. Ahmed doesn't have any time to lose. He is always ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) busy b) free c) easy d) lazy
4. ..... come to Egypt to enjoy the good weather and great mountains. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٠
   a) Thieves b) Tourists c) Bats d) Lorries
5. We didn't have time to go to the Science Museum, what a .....! القاهرة ٢٠٢٠
   a) dear b) really c) no d) pity
6. The children are sleeping now. They are ..... bed.
   a) with b) for c) in d) to
7. I went to the shop to buy tea, but the shop was ..... .
   a) opened b) open c) close d) closed
8. It rained a lot, but the match ..... .
   a) passed b) continued c) rode d) slept
9. I sent my friend a ..... on his birthday.
   a) ticket b) snail c) postcard d) sign
10. Some children like to play with ..... on the beach.
    a) snails b) tickets c) signs d) rules
11. He went to the ..... to watch the new play.
    a) park b) zoo c) library d) theatre
12. Please, tell me what ..... .
    a) happened b) showed c) followed d) slept
13. The bathroom is ready. It's ..... time.
    a) sign b) light c) bath d) ticket

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Responding to good/bad news

الرد على الأخبار الجيدة/السيئة

A) Good news: الأخبار الجيدة		B) Bad news: الأخبار السيئة	
How exciting!	كم هو مثير!	Oh, dear!	يا للهول!/ يا إلهى!
Really?	حقاً!	Oh, no!	أوه لا!/ يا إلهى!
Wow!	رائع!	What a pity!	يا للأسف!/ يا للحسرة!
That's interesting!	ذلك شيق!		

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue: القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

Nahla is very tired because she had a lot of work at home.

Nahla : Hello, Noha. Come in, please.

Noha : Hi, Nahla. (1).....?

Nahla : I didn't come to school today because I was very tired.

Noha : (2).....! Why?

Nahla : I had a lot of work at home.

Noha : Did you finish it?

Nahla : (3)..... .

Noha : Did your daughter help you?

Nahla : (4)..... .

Noha : (5).....?

Nahla : She didn't help me because she had a test.

هذا التدريب عبارة عن أسئلة تراكمية تهدف لقياس مدى استيعابك للدرسين.

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nour is telling Sarah about her trip to Paris.

Sarah : What are you doing?

Nour : (1)..... .

Sarah : Photos of your trip! (2).....?

Nour : I went to Paris.

Sarah: (3).....?

Nour : I visited the Eiffel Tower and the museum.

Sarah: What did you buy there?

Nour : (4)..... .

Sarah: Can I see them?

Nour : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** We didn't want to swim in the sea. **B:** What a .....!
   a) pity b) dear c) really d) no
2. Tourists usually stay in ..... when they visit other countries.
   a) mountains b) hotels
   c) tents d) caves
3. I will take holiday ..... to be good at English.
   a) tours b) towers
   c) courses d) schools
4. I ..... a wonderful time last week.
   a) had b) made
   c) did d) took
5. How exciting! Youssef ..... his driving test.
   a) failed b) passed
   c) planned d) found
6. We ..... our weekend. It was wonderful.
   a) enjoyed b) joined c) made d) did

7. I can't see anything. There's no ..... .
a) lit b) height c) light d) dark

8. **A:** ..... you go to Alexandria? **B:** Yes, I did. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a) Do b) Did c) Does d) Is

9. Did you ..... basketball yesterday?
a) play b) played c) playing d) are playing

10. Why ..... he sad last night?
a) is b) does c) was d) did

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. They travelled by car. They walked. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. Where do you go last week? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. How did your last weekend? (.....)
4. Samy didn't came to school yesterday. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: الدقهليه ٢٠٢٣

"Your last holiday"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Ugh! You're eating .....!
a) nails b) lights c) snails d) rules

2 There were many people from many countries on the train, ... England and France.
a) for example b) so c) because d) when

3 Where ..... yesterday evening?
a) you did b) did you c) you were d) were you

Review on Unit 5

Vocabulary

beach	شاطئ
light	ضوء/ مصباح
camp (ed)	يعسكر/ يخيم
London Eye	(عجلة لندن) معلم سياحى
make a sandcastle	يصنع قلعة رملية
cave	كهف
climb a mountain	يتسلق جبلًا
dolphin	دولفين
ride a bike	يركب دراجة
eat delicious food	يأكل طعامًا لذيذًا
fantastic	رائع
rules	قواعد
frightened of	خائف من
sign	لافتة
sleep in a tent	ينام فى خيمة
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة
souvenir	هدية تذكارية
holiday courses	دورات فى فترة الإجازة
swim in the lake	يسبح فى البحيرة
holiday flat	شقة العطلة
waterfall	شلال

Language

The Past Simple الماضى البسيط

1 Form:

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل

- I arrived late for school.

2 Key words:

(yesterday أمس - last ... الماضى - ... ago منذ - in the past فى الماضى - in + سنة فى الماضى (in 2010)

3 Negative:

Subject + did not (didn't) + inf. + ...

- You didn't **buy** a new notebook.

4 Yes/No questions:

- Did + subject + **inf. ...?**
- Did you **watch** TV last night?

5 Wh- questions:

Q. word (أداة استفهام) + did + subject + inf. ...?

A: What time did you **go** to bed?

B: I went to bed at 10 o'clock.

Skills

1. Asking and answering questions about your last holiday:

A: Where did you go on holiday?

B: I went to Alexandria.

A: Did you swim in the sea?

B: Yes, I did. I saw a dolphin too, and I swam with it.

A: What food did you eat?

B: I ate a lot of fish.

2. Responding to good/bad news:

A) Responding to good news:

How exciting!

Really?

Wow!

That's interesting!

B) Responding to bad news:

Oh, dear!

Oh, no!

What a pity!

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 5

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. When did you go to Jordan?
   a) Last year. b) Last holiday.
   c) Last month. d) Yesterday.
2. Where did you stay?
   a) On a farm. b) On the beach.
   c) In a hotel. d) In a holiday flat.
3. How were the places you visited?
   a) Famous. b) Boring.
   c) Cool. d) Busy.
4. How was your holiday?
   a) Late. b) Busy.
   c) Great. d) Ugly.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

Salma is telling Fatima about her visit to Alexandria.

Fatima : Where did you go on holiday last year?
Salma : (1)..... .
Fatima : (2).....?
Salma : I stayed in my uncle's flat.
Fatima : (3).....?
Salma : I travelled by train.
Fatima : Did you swim in the sea?
Salma : (4)..... .
Fatima : What did you eat there?
Salma : (5).....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

Dear Azza,

I am back from my holiday in Paris. I had a wonderful time! Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails! One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic in the gardens. We also went on a boat on the river. But, we did not have time to go to the Science Museum. I also wanted to see the art at the Louvre, but it was closed. Near our hotel, there was a busy market. I bought some postcards; I also bought you a souvenir. It is a very small Eiffel Tower! You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light on the top.

See you soon!

Fatma

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. What did Fatma buy from the busy market?

.....

3. Do you think Fatma enjoyed her holiday in Paris? Why? Why not?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "it" refers to ..... .
   a) picnic b) The Louvre c) Paris d) Eiffel Tower
5. Fatma bought a ..... for Azza.
   a) souvenir b) postcard c) food d) museum
6. The busy market was ..... Fatma's hotel.
   a) far from b) behind c) in front of d) next to

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In Egypt, we have the longest ..... in the world.
   a) sea b) waterfall c) river d) forest
2. They stay in a holiday ..... by the beach. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) flat b) fly c) float d) fat

3. Sohaila didn't want to go into the ..... because there were many bats.
a) cave b) cafe c) shop d) club

4. These shops are fantastic. I bought a lot of ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) waterfalls b) castles c) souvenirs d) caves

5. She bought a flat with a nice ..... on the Nile.
a) course b) queen c) review d) view

6. We went ..... a boat trip last week.
a) on b) of c) in d) at

7. You can see a lot of ..... for holiday courses in newspapers.
a) achievements b) advertisements c) signs d) experiments

8. I ..... lunch with Yasmeen last Friday.
a) have b) had c) having d) am having

9. They ..... football yesterday. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
a) played b) play c) playing d) plays

10. **A:** Where did he ..... in the desert? **B:** In a tent. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) sleep b) slept c) sleeping d) sleeps

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. It rain hard last night. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. She didn't at school yesterday. (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
3. Where did you stayed? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
4. Does your mother cook last night? (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

"A nice trip you had"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 6

Let's eat!

Objectives of the unit

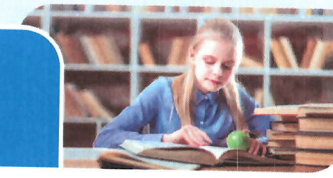
Tapescripts

Reading	A recipe; reviews of a dish; a text about healthy snacks; a text about food in Africa
Writing	A paragraph describing a picture; an online review of a café
Listening	A conversation about what food there is; an interview about healthy drinks; a conversation in a café
Speaking	Asking and answering about food in a picture; giving advice; ordering food in a café
Language	Countable and uncountable nouns; should and shouldn't for advice
Life Skills	Decision making; problem solving
Issues	Preventative health

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

Watch a video



SB pages 54 - 57 | WB pages 109 & 110

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bring/brought (v)	يحضر	perfect (adj)	ممتاز
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
equipment (n)	معدات	recipe (n)	وصفة طعام
fridge (n)	ثلاجة	review (n)	نقد/مقالة نقدية
ingredients (n)	مقادير /مكونات	sweet (adj)	حلو
Cooking verbs	أفعال الطهو	**Kitchenware**	أدوات المطبخ
add (ed) (v)	يضيف	bowl (n)	سلطانية
boil (ed) (v)	يغلى	cup (n)	فنجان
cook (ed) (v)	يطهى/يطبخ	saucepan (n)	قدر صغير
stir (red) (v)	يقلب	teaspoon (n)	ملعقة شاى

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

instructions (n)	تعليمات/إرشادات	share (d) (v)	يشارك

Kinds of food أنواع الأطعمة

Countable nouns	أسماء معدودة			Uncountable nouns	أسماء غير معدودة		
crisps	رقائق البطاطس	olives	زيتون	chocolate	شوكولاتة	hummus	حمص
figs	تين	peppers	فلفل	cinnamon	قرفة	rice pudding	أرز بودنج
nuts	جوز/بندق	raisins	زبيب	coconut	جوزة الهند	salad	سلطة

Check Point

Choose and complete: add – perfect – rice – peppers

1. My mother is a ..... cook.
2. My sister bought green ..... for salad.
3. I always prefer ..... pudding for dessert.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Prepositions — حروف الجر

cook for	يطبخ لـ	recipe for	وصفة طعام لـ
decide to + inf.	يقرر أن	put ..... into	يضع .... فى

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
boil	يغلى	freeze	يجمد
delicious	لذيذ	horrible	فظيع/كريه
healthy	صحى	unhealthy	غير صحى
perfect	ممتاز/مثالى	imperfect	غير مثالى

Check Point

Choose and complete: horrible – for – to

1. I read a good recipe ..... steak.
2. This cake is ..... . I can't taste it.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك لحروف الجر والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 decide to + inf. — يقرر أن

- My father decided to buy a new car.

2 Giving instructions — إعطاء تعليمات

عند اعطاء تعليمات نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل.

- Add the sugar to the rice and stir again.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	لذيذ
healthy	صحى	well	بصحة جيدة

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة		Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة	
equip (v)	يجهز	-ment	تحويل الفعل لاسم	equipment (n)	معدات
health (n)	صحة	-y	تحويل الاسم لصفة	healthy (adj)	صحى

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word الكلمة		The new word الكلمة الجديدة	
im-	تعطى عكس المعنى	perfect (adj)	ممتاز	imperfect (adj)	غير مثالى
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	healthy (adj)	صحى	unhealthy (adj)	غير صحى

Countable & Uncountable nouns أسماء تعد/لا تعد

Countable nouns أسماء معدودة				Uncountable nouns أسماء غير معدودة			
beans	فول	tomatoes	طماطم	cheese	جبن	sugar	سكر
biscuits	بسكويت	vegetables	خضراوات	chocolate	شوكولاتة	juice	عصير
cakes	كعك			fish	سمك	meat	لحم

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word الكلمة		Similar word الكلمة المشابهة	
fridge	ثلاجة	bridge	كوبرى
tasty	لذيذ	nasty	سيئ
prefer	يفضل	refer	يشير

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Wow! Did you make that cake? It looks delicious! The synonym of "delicious" is "……".
   a) well b) nasty c) tasteless d) tasty
2. To get the noun from the verb "equip", we add the suffix "……".
   a) -ive b) -ment c) -ness d) -ion
3. To get the opposite of "perfect", we add the prefix "……".
   a) ir- b) in c) im- d) dis-

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- Can you make lunch by yourself?

Listen to Nadia and her brother Omar.

Which two things do they not have?

SB page 55

Nadia Let's make lunch. I think we've got all the food.

Omar There is some salad. Is there any hummus[1]?

Nadia No, there isn't. But there are some olives[2].

Omar There are some peppers[3], too.

Nadia Good. Is there any cheese?

Omar Yes, there is. I've got it.

Nadia What about figs[4]?Are there any figs?

Omar No! There aren't any figs.

Nadia There are some raisins[5].

Omar That's good.

(1) حمص .....

(2) زيتون .....

(3) فلفل .....

(4) تين .....

(5) زبيب .....

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

hummus /hu:məs/ pepper /pepəʳ/ raisin /reɪzən/

Post-listening question:

- What are Nadia and Omar going to make?

Pre-reading question:

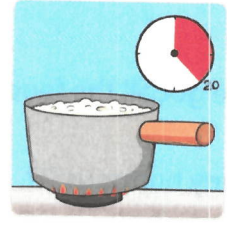
- Do you like Roz Bel Laban?

Read the recipe and put these pictures in the correct order. *SB page 56*

Roz Bel Laban: Egyptian Rice Pudding

F ☐

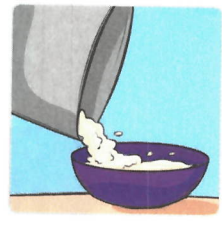
A ☐



C ☐

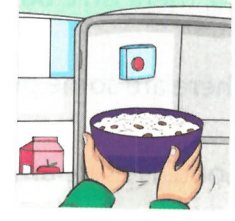
E ☐

D ☐



G ☐

B ☐



Ingredients

1 cup (1) of rice
2 cups of water
3 cups of milk
1 cup of sugar
¼ a cup of raisins
¼ a cup of nuts
¼ a teaspoon (2) of cinnamon

Instructions

1. Put the rice and water in a saucepan (3).
2. Boil (4) the rice and water for 20 minutes.
3. Add (5) the milk slowly as you stir (6).
4. Add the sugar and stir again.
5. Put the rice pudding into bowls.
6. Put the raisins, cinnamon and nuts on top.
7. Put the rice pudding in the fridge (7).

(1) فنجان (2) ملعقة شاى (3) قدر صغير (4) يغلى (5) يضيف (6) يقلب (7) ثلاجة

Note :

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

pudding /pʊdɪŋ/
cinnamon /sɪnəmən/
bowl /bəʊl/
ingredient /ɪngriːdiənt/
saucepan /sɔːspən/

Note:
عند إعطاء تعليمات تبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل.

Post-reading question:

- Are you going to try making rice pudding?

Read the reviews of the recipe. Who did not like it?

SB page 57

Really easy! ★★★★★

- This is a great recipe.
- It's really easy to make.
- There aren't a lot of ingredients and it's very quick to cook.

Fawzi

OK, but a bit boring ★★★

- I liked this rice pudding, but it isn't my favourite. I think there are too many raisins.
- I don't like them. I prefer rice pudding with coconut.

Hana

Perfect! ★★★★★

- There are a lot of rice pudding recipes online, but this is my favourite. It's easy to make and there's enough rice pudding for the whole family.
- There's a lot of sugar in the recipe, but I like sweet food.

Nabila

Not like my mum's rice pudding! ★★

- My mum's rice pudding is delicious, but this rice pudding isn't very good.
- There's too much sugar and there aren't enough other ingredients.

Salem

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

recipe /resɪpi/ coconut /koʊkənʌt/

Complete the text with *a lot of, enough, too much or too many*.

WB page 110

Mrs Amal has **a lot of** friends. Today, she is cooking for ten people. She has **enough** plates for people to eat on, but she does not have **enough** chairs, so her friend brings some. Now all the food is ready, but there is fish and rice for fifteen people, not ten! She has **too much** fish and rice. She decides to ask five more people, but they can't all sit down. There are **too many** people and not **enough** chairs!

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "....."is not a cooking verb. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) Pudding. b) Boil. c) Stir. d) Add.

2. Put rice and water in a ..... before cooking rice pudding. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

a) bag b) teaspoon c) saucepan d) cup

3. Sami thinks that the ..... of rice pudding is easy. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

a) recipe b) recycling c) road d) equipment

4. Who cooked this? It's ..... . I like it.

a) salty b) delicious c) ugly d) unhealthy

5. ..... the rice and water for 20 minutes.

a) Freeze b) Eat c) Boil d) Bring

6. My mother uses healthy ..... to cook our food.

a) bowls b) ingredients c) instructions d) fridges

7. Put the rice pudding ..... bowls.

a) from b) into c) for d) with

8. We keep our food in the ..... to be cold and good.

a) cooker b) fridge c) desk d) bowl

9. Put the ..... , cinnamon and nuts on top of the rice pudding.

a) water b) salt c) raisins d) peppers

10. Hazem forgot to ..... the sugar in his tea.

a) eat b) cook c) boil d) stir

11. There are easy ..... to make rice pudding.

a) meals b) teams c) groups d) instructions

12. We use sugar to make our food or drinks ..... .

a) ugly b) bad c) sweet d) salty

13. I like eating ..... . They are full of Vitamin E.

a) nuts b) bowls c) cups d) pots

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't ..... much sugar to tea. It is unhealthy. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) work b) buy c) add d) bring
2. Your idea is ..... . They will like it.
   a) ugly b) boring c) perfect d) bad
3. ..... is a natural drink and very healthy. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٠
   a) Raisin b) Pepper c) Cinnamon d) Nuts
4. It's ..... to eat lots of crisps. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) healthy b) unhealthy c) nice d) good
5. My mother always ..... lunch at three o'clock.
   a) makes b) does c) plays d) wears
6. You can put a ..... of cinnamon now.
   a) pan b) pot c) saucepan d) teaspoon
7. Most people in Egypt eat ..... for breakfast.
   a) beans b) fish c) meat d) recipes
8. Put the rice into a big ..... .
   a) field b) cup c) cupboard d) bowl
9. Making rice pudding is ..... . Everyone can make it very quickly.
   a) bad b) difficult c) easy d) hard
10. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe, but I like ..... food.
    a) ugly b) hot c) salty d) sweet
11. I don't like raisins. I ..... rice pudding with coconut.
    a) stir b) share c) prefer d) bring
12. Mrs Amal has a lot of friends. Today, she is cooking ..... ten people.
    a) for b) in c) at d) on
13. Now come to eat, all the food is ..... .
    a) full b) ready c) unhealthy d) empty

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Countable and uncountable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة والأسماء غير المعدودة

1 Uncountable nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

meat – sugar – salt – cheese – salad – juice – hummus

- **Uncountable nouns do not have a plural form. We cannot count them and we cannot use a/an before them.**
- الأسماء التى لا تعد ليس لها جمع. لا يمكن عدها ولا يتم استخدام (a/an) قبلها.

- There is some bread on the table.
- There isn't any meat in the dish.

2 Countable nouns الأسماء المعدودة

(cake – cakes) / (fig – figs) / (olive – olives) / (tomato – tomatoes)

- **Countable nouns are nouns we can count. They can be singular or plural. We can use a/an before a singular countable noun. The plural usually ends in -s.**
- الأسماء المعدودة: هى الأسماء التى يمكن عدها وتكون مفردًا أو جمعًا. يمكن استخدام (a/an) قبل الاسم المفرد فقط. ينتهى الاسم الجمع غالبًا بحرف (s).

Countable nouns

1 Singular مفرد

- نستخدم الفعل فى حالة المفرد إذا كان الاسم مفرداً

- There is a **restaurant** in this street.
- This is not an **olive**. It's a **peach**.

2 Plural جمع

- نستخدم الفعل فى حالة الجمع إذا كان الاسم جمعًا.

- There are some **shops** in this street.
- There aren't any **peppers**.

لاحظ

يتم استخدام (a/an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يعد:

- نستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد المعدود الذى يبدأ بصوت متحرك (a – e – i – o – u):

- There's an **apple** on the table.
- Ola ate an **orange**.

- نستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد المعدود الذى يبدأ بصوت ساكن:

- There's a **car** in front of my house.
- There's a **book** in my bag.

Remember

3 There is (يوجد (للمفرد/ للكمية) — There are (يوجد (للجمع فقط)

Form:

- There is / isn't ▶ (اسم مفرد يعد/اسم لا يعد)
  - There is **an apple** on the table.
  - There is **some rice** in the dish.
  - There isn't **any sugar** in the tea.

Question:

- Is there + اسم مفرد يعد/اسم لا يعد .....?
  - Is there **an apple** on the table?

- There are/ aren't ▶ (اسم جمع)
  - There are **some apples** on the table.
  - There are **some raisins**.
  - There aren't **any potatoes** in the market.

Question:

- Are there + اسم جمع .....?
  - Are there **any apples** on the table?

Remember

4 Some & Any — بعض / أى

Some

- We use "some" for **affirmative** sentences.

- نستخدم (some) بمعنى (بعض) مع الجمل المثبتة. نستخدم بعدها اسمًا (يعد) فى حالة الجمع أو اسمًا لا يُعد (كمية).

- There are some **figs** in this dish. (countable)
- There is some **rice** in this dish. (uncountable)

لاحظ

- **We use some in Yes/ No questions that are offers or requests.**

◀ يمكننا استخدام (some) فى السؤال فى حالتى (العرض والطلب).

- Would you like some tea? ▶ offer عرض
- Can I have some books? ▶ request طلب

Any

- We use "any" for **negative sentences** and **questions**.

- نستخدم (any) بمعنى (أى) مع الجمل المنفية وفى السؤال. نستخدم بعدها اسمًا (يعد) فى حالة الجمع أو اسمًا لا يعد (كمية).

- There **aren't** any olives. (جملة منفية)
- **Has** koshari got any meat in it? (سؤال)

5 Quantifiers محددات الكمية

a lot of, enough, too much, too many

- **We can use these words with countable and uncountable nouns.**

- يمكن استخدام هذه الكلمات مع الأسماء التى تُعد والأسماء التى لا تُعد.

a lot of

- تأتى بمعنى (كثير من) ويتبعها اسم يُعد (جمع) / اسم لا يُعد.
(تستخدم للتعبير عن تواجد شىء بكثرة)

- There is a lot of **sugar**.
- There are a lot of rice pudding **recipes.**

enough

- تأتى بمعنى (كافٍ) ويتبعها اسم يُعد (جمع) / اسم لا يُعد.
(تستخدم للتعبير عن تواجد شىء بالكمية أو العدد المناسب)

- There are not enough **chairs.**
- There is enough **rice** pudding for all the family.

too many

- تأتى بمعنى (كثير من) ويتبعها اسم يُعد (جمع).
(تستخدم للتعبير عن وجود شىء زائد عن العدد اللازم)

- There are too many **people** in the party.

too much

- تأتى بمعنى (كثير من) ويتبعها اسم لا يُعد.
(تستخدم للتعبير عن وجود شىء زائد عن الكم اللازم)

- There's too much **rice and fish.**

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I saw a lot animals in the zoo. (.....)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (lot of).

2. He put too many salt in the food. (.....)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (much) لأن salt اسم لا يُعد.

3. We have a bread for all. There isn't too much. (.....)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (enough) لأن كلمة bread اسم لا يعد، والمعنى يحتاج لكلمة كافٍ.

4. I don't want some sugar. (.....)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (any) لأن الجملة منفية.

5. There is a boy in the classroom? (.....)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (Is there) لوجود علامة استفهام فهى صيغة سؤال.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲Remembering ▲Understanding ▲Applying ▲Analysing ▲Evaluating ▲Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There ..... a lot of snow in the mountains. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) does b) is c) has d) were
2. There are ..... boys in the family, but there aren't many girls. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) too much b) much c) too many d) a lot
3. Don't put ..... butter in the pan. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) enough b) many c) too much d) some
4. There aren't ..... potatoes in the fridge. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) any b) some c) an d) a
5. There is ..... cheese in the fridge. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) an b) as c) a d) some
6. There ..... figs in the cupboard. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) isn't any b) is any c) are any d) aren't any
7. There is ..... rice for you.
   a) enough b) any c) many d) lot
8. This cake is very sweet. There's too ..... sugar in it. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢
   a) enough b) much c) many d) lot of
9. There are ..... people on the beach today. Let's go to another one. WB
   a) too much b) too many c) enough d) a lot of
10. I don't have ..... friends.
   a) a b) some c) any d) much

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Is there any computers in the classroom? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. There are any printers in my classroom. (.....) البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
3. There are a lot of sand in the desert. (.....) القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
4. We shouldn't eat some crisps. (.....) دمياط ٢٠٢٣
5. There is too many kids in the club. (.....)
6. There are any carrots in the fridge? (.....) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There ..... any notebooks in my bag. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) is b) isn't c) are d) aren't
2. There's ..... hummus in the jar. الشرقية ٢٠٢٠
   a) any b) some c) many d) a lot
3. There are ..... people in the market today. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) too much b) much c) a lot d) too many
4. She wants to buy another book, but there ..... enough money with her.
   a) is b) are c) aren't d) isn't
5. Are there ..... apples in the fridge? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) a b) any c) much d) an
6. There is not ..... rain for orange trees to grow in the desert. WB
   a) too much b) too many c) enough d) a lot of
7. I don't have ..... money to buy this dress.
   a) any b) some c) many d) lot
8. Let's go to the shops. There is ..... time before the train leaves.
   a) little b) too many c) enough d) many
9. There ..... figs in the cupboard. WB
   a) is any b) are any c) aren't any d) aren't some
10. ..... any subjects you don't like?
   a) There is b) There are c) Is there d) Are there

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Are there some tomatoes in the fridge? (.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
2. I don't like this tea. There is too many sugar in it. (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
3. She put too many salt in the food. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
4. There isn't some cheese in the fridge. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
5. There isn't any canals near our village. (.....)
6. There aren't a charger in my room. (.....)

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

1. Speaking

Ask and answer questions about food

السؤال والإجابة عن الطعام

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response جملة الرد
What food do you like?	ما الطعام الذى تحبه؟
I like salad and meat.	أحب السلطة واللحم.
What food don't you like?	ما الطعام الذى لا تحبه؟
I don't like olives.	لا أحب الزيتون.
Is there any cheese?	هل يوجد أى جبن؟
Yes, there is.	نعم، يوجد.
Are there any biscuits?	هل يوجد أى بسكويت؟
No, there aren't.	لا، لا يوجد.

Speaking Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

▶ **Mona and Hend are making lunch.**

Mona: I'm hungry. Let's make lunch.
Hend: OK. There is some salad. Is there any hummus?
Mona: (1)......, but there are some olives.
Hend: (2)..... .
Mona: Good. I like peppers. (3).....?
Hend: Yes, there is some cheese.
Mona: What about figs? (4).....?
Hend: No, there aren't any figs.
Mona: Are there any raisins?
Hend: (5)..... . They are in the fridge.

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء الى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about a dish recipe.

كيفية الكتابة عن وصفة أكلة.

- I'd like to tell you about (اسم الأكلة) recipe.
- It's (easy/not easy) to make.
- There are a lot of (المكونات) in it.
- First, (الخطوة الأولى)
- Then, (الخطوة الثانية)
- After that, (الخطوة التالية)
- Finally, (الخطوة الأخيرة)

Writing tips

Use varied sentence patterns in your writing. There should be both long and short sentences.

استخدم نماذج متنوعة فى الجمل. يجب أن تكون هناك جمل طويلة وأخرى قصيرة فى الفقرة.

Example

A good recipe

There are a lot of recipes, but I like Roz Bel Laban, Egyptian rice pudding. There are a lot of rice pudding recipes online, but this is my favourite. It's easy to make and there's enough rice pudding for the whole family. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe, but I like sweet food. This is the recipe. First, put rice and water in a saucepan and boil them for 20 minutes. Then, add milk slowly and sugar as you stir. After that, put the rice pudding into bowls and put raisins, cinnamon and nuts on top. Finally, put the rice pudding in the fridge.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"A recipe of a dish I like"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

1. What did father and mother eat?
   a) Fish. b) Rice with fish.
   c) Chicken with rice. d) Rice.
2. Where did they have their meal?
   a) At home. b) At school.
   c) At club. d) At cafe.
3. How many people went for lunch?
   a) Four. b) Three.
   c) Five. d) Two.
4. Why did they choose this place? Because it was ..... .
   a) bad b) happy
   c) nice d) far

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can find teaspoons, saucepans and cups in the ..... .
   a) kitchen b) hall c) playground d) library
2. This recipe is ..... . It's my favourite. الجيزة ٢٠٢٠
   a) boring b) bad c) perfect d) terrible
3. There are a lot of rice pudding ..... online. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) recipes b) instructions c) daughters d) ingredients
4. I don't like raisins. I prefer rice pudding with ..... .
   a) peppers b) coconut c) olive d) salt
5. I like sweet ..... .
   a) peppers b) cinnamon c) raisins d) fish
6. What kind of books do you .....?
   a) add b) boil c) bring d) prefer
7. Rice, milk, coconut and raisins are the ..... of rice pudding. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) instructions b) ingredients c) recipes d) flavours

8. My mum prepared some ..... for me and my friends on our school trip. الجيزة ٢٠٢٠

a) sandwich
b) sandwiches'
c) sandwiches
d) a sandwich

9. There ..... some water on the table.

a) are
b) is
c) were
d) has

10. I don't like these cakes because they have ..... sugar in them. WB

a) too much
b) too many
c) enough
d) a lot of

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. There are any vegetables on the table. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. There aren't too much tomatoes. (.....) كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٠
3. There aren't enough milk to make hot chocolate. (.....) WB
4. Can I have a apple? (.....) بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

"Your favourite food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Pots, bowls and saucepans are all ..... that mothers use in the kitchen.

a) food
b) ingredient
c) recipe
d) equipment

2. We can't count ..... .

a) cinnamon
b) children
c) men
d) sheep

3. My brother joined ..... university in England.

a) any
b) an
c) a
d) some

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 58 - 60 | WB pages 111 & 112

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

amazing (adj)	مذهل	potatoes (n)	بطاطس
fat (n)	دهون	shepherd's pie (n)	فطيرة الراعى
fizzy drinks (n)	مشروبات غازية	spices (n)	توابل
fruit juice (n)	عصير فواكه	stew (n)	حساء/يخنة
onions (n)	بصل	taste (n)	مذاق

African dishes أكلات إفريقية

kapenta (n)	كابينتا (نوع سمك)	nyama na irio (n)	نياما نا إريو (اسم أكلة)
koshari (n)	كشرى	tagine (n)	طاجن

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

article (n)	مقالة	dry (y ied) (v)	يجفف
body (n)	جسم/جسد	introduce (d) (v)	يقدم
chocolate ice cream (n)	آيس كريم شيكولاتة	introduction (n)	مقدمة
cooking pot (n)	إناء للطهى	pasta (n)	مكرونة
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	traditional (adj)	تقليدى

Adjectives to describe the food صفات تصف الطعام

amazing	مذهل	great	عظيم
delicious	لذيذ	healthy	صحى
fantastic	رائع	wonderful	رائع

Check Point

Choose and complete: spices – fizzy – pot – dry

1. We shouldn't have a lot of ..... drinks. It's unhealthy.
2. My mum added some ..... to the recipe.
3. It was raining outside. I should ..... my clothes.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

add	> to your weight	يضيف إلى وزنك	give	> advice on	يعطى نصيحة لـ
catch (caught)	> fish	يصطاد سمكًا	make	> snacks	يعد وجبات خفيفة
cause	> illness	تسبب المرض	order	> food	يطلب طعامًا
clean	> teeth	نظف أسنانك	see	> a doctor	يزور طبيبًا

Prepositions حروف الجر

a glass of	كوب من	careful with	حريص على
a meal with	وجبة بها	good for	مفيد لـ
a piece of	قطعة من	look after	يعتنى بـ
at dinner time	فى وقت العشاء	type of	نوع من

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
careful	حريص	careless	مهمل
forget	ينسى	remember	يتذكر
good for	مفيد لـ	bad for	ضار لـ
hungry	جائع	full	ممتلئ

Check Point

Choose and complete: clean – hungry – of – at

1. Please, mum. I need a piece ..... cake.
2. I can't wait. I'm very ..... .
3. We should ..... our teeth in the morning.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **It is a good idea to + inf.** إنها فكرة جيدة أن (وتستخدم لتقديم النصيحة)

- It is a good idea to **eat** between two and four pieces of fruit a day.

2 **try + (v + ing) / noun / try to + inf.** يجرب بـ / يحاول أن

- I'd like to try koshari/eating koshari.
- We should try to drink a glass of milk every day.

3 **enjoy + (v + ing) / noun** يستمتع بـ ....

- I enjoy watching TV.
- I enjoy music.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
careful	حريص	cautious	حريص
right	صحيح	correct	صحيح

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
ill (adj)	مريض	-ness		تحول الصفة لإسم		illness (n)	مرض
introduce (v)	يقدم	-tion		تحول الفعل لإسم		introduction (n)	مقدمة
tradition (n)	تقليد	-al		تحول الإسم لصفة		traditional (adj)	تقليدى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - What are your favourite snacks?

Look at the photos and read the introduction. What does the article give advice on?

SB page 58

Lesson 3

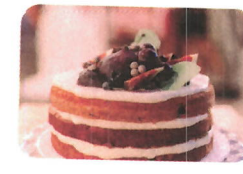
(1) وجبات خفيفة
(2) دهون
(3) ملح
(4) مذاق حلو
(5) عصير فواكه

Healthy Snacks

Everyone loves snacks[1]! But some snacks are bad for us. What is the best way to enjoy healthy snacks?

Crisps and cakes

It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat[2] and salt[3]. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies.



Fantastic fruit

Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us and most people like the sweet taste[4]. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day.

Beans and vegetables

Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. Snacks like hummus with carrot and pepper are delicious.

Be careful!

We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice[5] has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

biscuit /bɪskɪt/ taste /teɪst/

Post-reading question:

- What types of snacks should we eat a lot?

Pre-listening question:

- Should we drink a lot of water? Why/ Why not?

Listen to the interview and check your answers to Ex 6. *SB page 59*

(1) دهون .....

(2) مشروبات .....

(3) مشروبات غازية

Presenter It's important to eat the right things, but we shouldn't forget about what we drink. Dr. Randa Zaki is here to tell us more. Dr. Randa, what should we drink?

Dr. Randa Well, we should drink a lot of water. Water is great because it hasn't got any fat[1] or sugar.

Presenter OK, so we should drink more water. And which drinks are bad for us?

Dr. Randa Some drinks[2] have a lot of sugar. We shouldn't drink these because they are bad for our bodies and they are bad for our teeth.

Presenter So we shouldn't have drinks with a lot of sugar. Some fizzy drinks[3] don't have any sugar. Are they okay?

Dr. Randa No, fizzy drinks are always bad for our teeth, even when they don't have sugar.

Presenter So, we shouldn't have fizzy drinks. Are any drinks good for our teeth?

Dr. Randa Yes, milk is good for our teeth. We should try to drink a glass of milk every day.

Post-listening question:

- What do you think of fizzy drinks?

Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite food?

Read the descriptions and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 60

Food in Africa

Egypt has a lot of interesting food, but my favourite meal is koshari. It is a delicious meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes. It is very popular. Many people like it.

Marwa

(1) طاجن
(2) حساء/يخنة
(3) توابل
(4) مذهل

I live in Morocco. Tagine[1] is a traditional meal from my country. It is a stew[2] with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices[3].

The taste is amazing[4]! The name tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food.

Hamza

In Kenya, people often make nyama na irio[5] for dinner. It is a stew with meat and potatoes. It is wonderful[6]! I love eating it after school when I am very hungry!

Makena

Kapenta[7] is a popular type of fish in Zimbabwe. We catch the fish from the lake and dry it in the sun. Kapenta is very good for you, so you can eat it every day. We often cook it with tomatoes and onions[8]. It is great!

Bradley

(5) نياما نا ايرو (اسم أكلة)
(6) رائع
(7) كابينتا (اسم أكلة)
(8) بصل

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

tagine /tæˈʒiːn/ stew /stjuː/ spice /spaɪs/
Zimbabwe /zɪmˈbɑːbwɪ/

Post-reading question:

- Which meal would you like to try? Why?

Listen and tick (✓) the ingredients for shepherd's pie. *WB page 112*

In England, people often have a traditional meal called shepherd's pie[1]. You make it with meat, carrots and other vegetables with potatoes on top. It is wonderful[2]. My favourite meal is shepherd's pie, and then chocolate ice cream.

(1) فطيرة الراعى

(2) رائع

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

shepherd /ʃepəʳd/ pie /paɪ/

Issues

Work in pairs. Discuss these situations. What should we do? What shouldn't we do?

اعمل مع زميلك. ناقش تلك المواقف. ماذا يجب أن نفعل؟ وماذا يجب ألا نفعل؟

1. I like sweet food, but I don't want to eat too many cakes or biscuits.
   - You shouldn't eat too many cakes or biscuits.
2. I want to look after my teeth.
   .....
3. I'm not hungry at dinner time.
   .....
4. I eat a lot of olives because they are good for me.
   .....

- You need to have healthy foods that help your body to grow.
- Unhealthy foods cause illness and add to your weight.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't drink lots of ..... as they are not good for your body. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) fizzy drinks b) milk c) apple juice d) water
2. Koshari is a famous Egyptian ..... . قنا ٢٠٢٢
   a) dish b) fish c) fig d) fan
3. Cakes and chocolate have a lot of ..... and sugar. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) meat b) fat c) spices d) vegetables
4. Tagine is a traditional ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) sport b) hobby c) drink d) meal
5. Please, do not take any ..... between breakfast and lunch.
   a) pots b) articles c) snacks d) snakes
6. ..... give food a good taste. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Cultures b) Spaces c) Spices d) Flavours
7. I always eat ..... of fruit at lunchtime. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) prices b) prizes c) spices d) pieces
8. Fruit ..... has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it.
   a) fan b) fizzy c) fat d) juice
9. She is still weak after her ..... .
   a) advice b) pie c) illness d) situation
10. Beans and koshari are ..... meals in Egypt.
    a) bad b) unknown c) unusual d) traditional
11. People of Kenya often have meat ..... for lunch.
    a) glass b) article c) pot d) stew
12. We eat when we are ..... .
    a) hungry b) full c) careful d) wrong
13. We went to the lake to ..... fish.
    a) clean b) give c) catch d) cause

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Kapenta is a type of ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) meat b) fruit c) vegetable d) fish
2. Koshari is a delicious meal with ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) rice b) fruit c) fish d) potatoes
3. Can I have a ..... of cake, please? بني سويف ٢٠٢٢
   a) cup b) piece c) bottle d) saucepan
4. When he drank the juice, he liked the ..... very much.
   a) paste b) test c) taste d) shoes
5. Water hasn't got any ..... or sugar.
   a) glass b) pan c) pot d) fat
6. Drinks with a lot of sugar are bad for our ..... .
   a) pieces b) pies c) bodies d) houses
7. We should try to drink a ..... of milk every day.
   a) glass b) pot c) bowl d) piece
8. We love chicken and rice. They are .....!
   a) salty b) bad c) scary d) delicious
9. After washing the clothes, we should put them in the sun to ..... .
   a) boil b) dry c) cool d) heat
10. We can ..... with our tongues. القاهرة ٢٠٢٠
    a) smell b) taste c) touch d) see
11. Everyone loves snacks, but some snacks are bad ..... us.
    a) with b) at c) to d) for
12. The doctor gave me ..... on the food I should eat.
    a) advise b) advice c) device d) devise
13. Tagine is the name of a meal and a cooking ..... in Morocco. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
    a) piece b) pot c) body d) glass

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

1 Giving advice

إعطاء النصيحة

- **We use should/shouldn't to say that something is or is not a good idea.**

- عند إعطاء النصح نستخدم (should) (ينبغى أن) أو (shouldn't) (لا ينبغى أن) ثم الفعل فى المصدر.

Affirmative

Subject + **should** + **inf.**

- We should **drink** a lot of water.
- We should **eat** healthy food.

Negative

Subject + **shouldn't** + **inf.**

- You shouldn't **eat** too many crisps.
- You should not **drink** too much fruit juice.

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Ali is ill, he shouldn't see a doctor. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (should) لأن الجملة تعبر عن نصيحة بفعل شىء مفيد.

2. We should ate healthy food. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (eat) لوجود should التى يأتى بعدها مصدر.

Yes/No questions:

Should + subject + inf. .....?

- **A:** Should we eat healthy snacks? **B:** Yes, you should.
- **A:** Should he play video games tonight? **B:** No, he shouldn't.

لاحظ

تستخدم should لتقديم الاقتراحات أو تقديم الرأى:

- We should visit our grandparents tonight.

Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Should we drank lots of fizzy drinks? (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (drink) لوجود should التى يتبعها فعل فى المصدر.

2. No, we should make noise in the library. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (shouldn't) لوجود No الدالة على النفى.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The saucepan is very hot. You shouldn't ..... it. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) touched b) touches c) touch d) touching
2. You ..... never leave without having breakfast.
   a) shouldn't b) should c) will d) won't
3. People should ..... between two and four pieces of fruit a day.
   a) eat b) eating c) eats d) ate
4. ..... eat a lot of vegetables.
   a) We have b) Have we c) Should we d) We should
5. You should ..... careful with the food you eat.
   a) am b) is c) are d) be
6. We ..... drink too much fruit juice. It is unhealthy.
   a) should not b) should c) must d) aren't
7. What types of snacks ..... eat a lot?
   a) we should b) should we c) should d) we
8. You should always ..... your mother.
   a) helping b) to help c) help d) helped
9. You ..... ask the teacher to help you if you don't understand the lesson.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) have d) haven't
10. We ..... eat too much cake. It has too much sugar in it. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) should b) shouldn't c) must d) can

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You should cleaning your teeth in the morning. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. We should study hard for our exams? (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٠
3. They should drinks healthy water. (.....) كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
4. Hany should eat snacks in the classroom. (.....) الشرقية ٢٠٢٠
5. That's a fantastic book. You should reading it. (.....)
6. You should eat too much chocolate. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about healthy snacks.
كيفية الكتابة عن الوجبات الصحية الخفيفة.

- Everyone loves snacks.
- Some snacks are bad for us.
- Fruit is very good for us.
- Vegetables don't have much sugar.

Writing tips

Use linking words to connect the sentences and make the paragraph a well-knit whole.

استخدم الروابط للربط بين الجمل ولعمل فقرة محكمة كليًا.

Example

Healthy snacks/food

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are bad for us. It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day. Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it.

2. How to write a review of a café. كيفية كتابة نقد عن مقهى

- I went to a café in Cairo (الوقت).
- We had (الطعام).
- We had (الحلو) for dessert.
- I went with (الأشخاص).
- The food was (صفاته).
- I enjoyed (الحلو) most.

Example

A review of a café

I would like to write about an amazing meal I remember. I visited my cousins in Alexandria last Friday with my dad, mother and brother. They took us to a café for lunch. It was near the beach and it had big windows. It was wonderful watching the clean water of the sea. I had my favourite meal, chicken. I love chicken, but this was different. It was delicious. All my family had fish from the sea. We all liked our food. We then all had Egyptian rice pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in its recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy. It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again one day.

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

To be healthy, our bodies need food, exercise and enough sleep. Food gives us energy, but we should choose the healthy kind of food. The good food should contain meat, rice, beans, fruit and vegetables. They build our bodies and make us strong. Fruit and vegetables give us vitamins to stop illness. They also give us fibre which helps us digest our food. Exercises help us to be fit. Enough sleep helps us to rest and renew our energy.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a title to this text. .....
2. What should good food contain? .....
3. Why do you think we should eat healthy food? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "us" refers to ..... .
   a) animals b) birds c) people d) things
5. "....." means to do something again after a pause, usually with more energy.
   a) Renew b) Digest c) Contain d) Fit
6. Exercises help us to be ..... .
   a) fat b) fit c) fake d) fool

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I don't like this type ..... fish. It's salty.
   a) at b) on c) of d) from
2. Eating lots of fats and sugar ..... much to your weight.
   a) adds b) makes c) catches d) orders
7. Chop the vegetables into ..... and eat them with your breakfast.
   a) spears b) species c) spices d) pieces
3. ..... is a delicious meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes.
   a) Cheese b) Koshari c) Kapenta d) Milk
4. Eating unhealthy food ..... illness.
   a) causes b) catches c) adds d) cleans
5. When we are ill, we should ..... a doctor.
   a) give b) cause c) see d) give

6. I look ..... my little sister when my mother is out.
a) for b) after c) at d) up

7. Crisps every day! That's very bad for you. You ..... stop eating them!
a) should b) shouldn't
c) mustn't d) should never

8. You ..... study hard to get high marks. القاهرة ٢٠٢٠
a) should b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) doesn't

9. You should ..... that new film. It's great!
a) seeing b) to see c) sees d) see

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. It's a beautiful day. We shouldn't walk to the park. (.....)
2. Children shouldn't running in the street. (.....)
3. We shouldn't be very careful when we cook in the kitchen. (.....)
4. We should go to school on time? (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

"Food you should or shouldn't eat"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. People should eat between two and four pieces of fruit ..... day.
a) an b) in c) a d) at

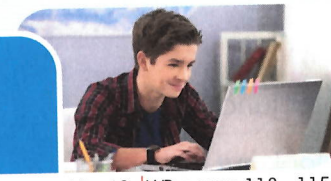
2. We should try to drink a glass of milk ..... .
a) every day b) everyday c) every d) day

3. We ..... never eat too many sweets. They are bad for our teeth.
a) should b) should to c) shouldn't d) shouldn't to

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 61 - 63 | WB pages 113 - 115

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

assistant (n)	مساعد/بائع	dessert (n)	حلوى
café (n)	مقهى	menu (n)	قائمة طعام
chef (n)	شيف/ كبير الطهاة	waiter (n)	نادل/جرسون
customer (n)	زبون		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

basbousa (n)	بسبوسة	look (ed) like	يشبه
cheese pizza (n)	بيتزا بالجبنة	real (adj)	حقيقى
go back (v)	يعود/يرجع	restaurant (n)	مطعم
hope (d) (v)	يأمل	review (n)	نقد
kunafa (n)	كنافة	tomato pizza (n)	بيتزا بالطماطم

Check Point

Choose and complete: chef – menu – review – kunafa

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

1. My uncle is a famous ..... .
2. I read a ..... about that restaurant.
3. My favourite dessert is ..... .

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

look >	nice/delicious	يبدو لطيفا/ لذيذا	make >	a list	يقوم بعمل قائمة
write >	a list	يكتب قائمة		sure	يتأكد

Prepositions

حروف الجر

for lunch	على الغداء	on the sea	فى البحر
look out of	ينظر من	on the water	فى الماء

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
small	صغير	large	كبير

Check Point

Choose and complete: looks – for – on – make

1. I bought some bread ..... lunch.
2. Students should ..... sure from their answers.
3. This tagine ..... delicious.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- What kind of pizza do you like?

Listen to the people in a café. Tick (✓) the food that the customer buys.

SB page 60

Assistant Hello. What would you like today?

Customer I'd like a cheese and tomato pizza, please.

Assistant OK. Anything else?

Customer Yes, a salad, please.

Assistant Small or large?

Customer Small, please.

Assistant And would you like any drinks?

Customer Have you got any fruit juice?

Assistant Yes, we've got apple juice and orange juice.

Customer I'd like an orange juice, please.

Assistant Is that everything?

Customer Yes, it is.

Assistant That's 105 pounds, please.

Customer Thank you, here you are.

Post-listening question:

- What kind of pizza would the customer like to have?

Pre-reading question:

- Did you try eating in a café? What did you like about it?

Read the review. What did Sara like most about her visit?

SB page 62

City Café

Great visit! ★★★★★

Review by: Sara

I visited this café last weekend with my mum, my dad and my brother, Ashraf. We chose this café for lunch because it looked very nice. The walls were green and white and there were big windows. (I love looking out of the window and watching the city.)

Ashraf and I both had rice for lunch. I had fish with rice and he had chicken. My dad had fish with rice, too, and mum had a salad. It's very healthy! We all liked our food.

After lunch, Ashraf and I had desserts. This was the part we enjoyed most! There were a lot of different desserts and they all looked delicious! I chose basbousa and Ashraf had kunafa. They were amazing!!!

I'd like to visit this café again (very soon)!

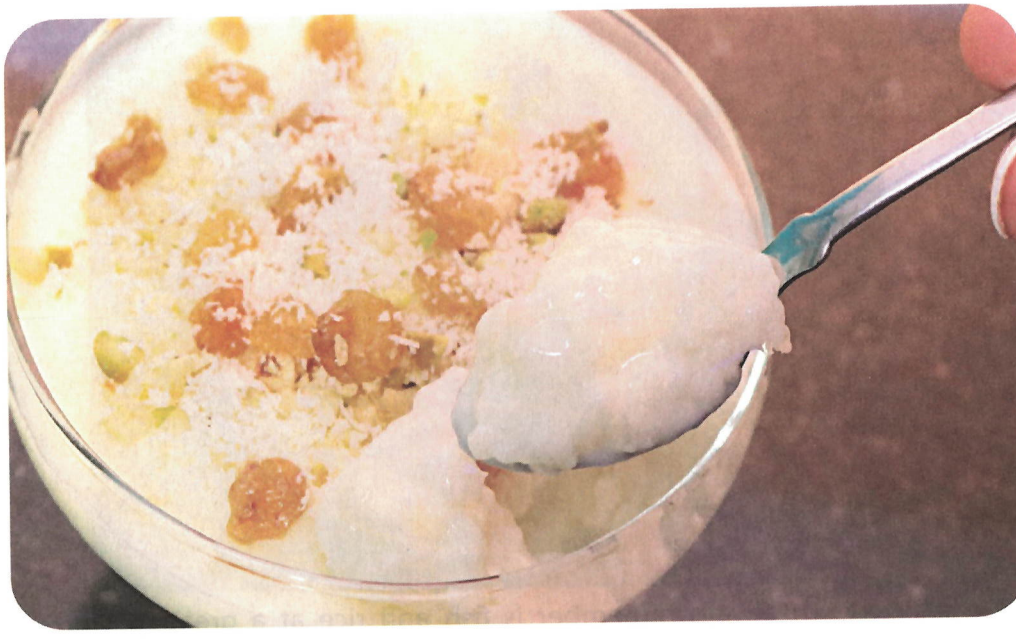
Post-reading questions:

1. Why did Sara's mum have a salad?
2. Who is Ashraf?

Pre-reading question:

- What is your favourite meal?

Put the article in the correct order. *WB page 114*



1. I want to write about an amazing meal I remember. I visited my cousins in Damietta last summer with my dad, mother and sister. They took us to a café for lunch. It was near the beach and it had big windows. (It was wonderful watching the boats on the water.)

2. I had my favourite meal, Koshari. I love Koshari but this was different than usual. It was delicious. My family and cousins all had fish from the sea! We all liked our food.

3. We then all had Egyptian Rice Pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in this recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy.

4. It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again (one day)!

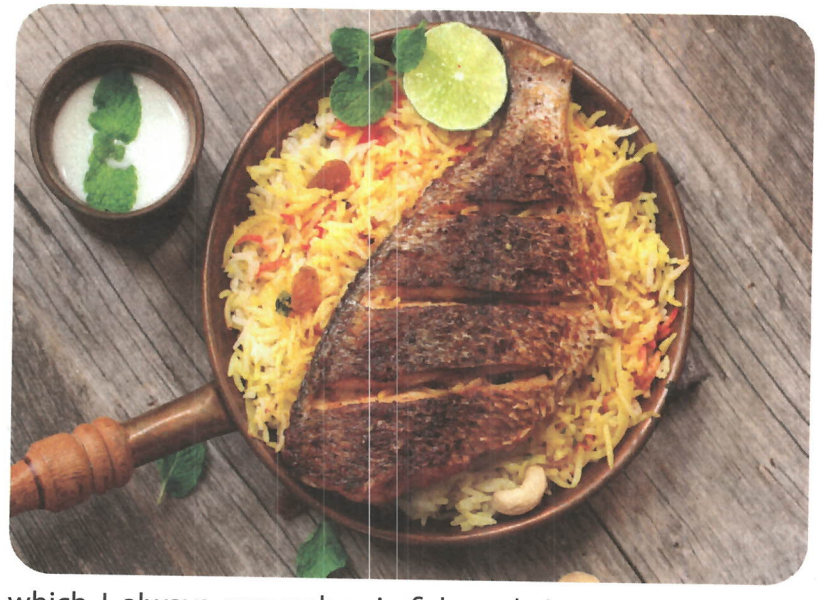
Post-reading question:

- Why did they like the café?

Pre-reading question:

- What kind of food do you like?

Read this review. Circle the topic sentence. Underline the supporting sentences.



A meal which I always remember is fish and rice at a great restaurant in Alexandria. I went there with my family. The restaurant was very near the sea so the fish was very fresh. We chose the fish and the chef cooked it for us. My parents ate their favourite fish and my brother enjoyed watching the boats on the sea. I hope we can go back to the restaurant again soon.

Post-reading question:

- Why was the fish very fresh?

Project

Write a recipe for a meal or snack.

اكتب وصفة لوجبة (رئيسية) أو وجبة خفيفة.

1. Choose a meal or a snack. Write a list of ingredients.
2. Make a list of instructions. Make sure that you:
   - Say what to do for each part of the recipe.
   - Put the instructions in the correct order.
3. Write your recipe. You can add pictures if you like.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The waiter gave me the ..... to choose food. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) list b) book c) menu d) dish
2. I ate a small pizza, but my brother ordered a ..... one.
   a) tiny b) little c) small d) large
3. A/An ..... is the person who buys things from a shop.
   a) waiter b) customer c) assistant d) chef
4. He cooks food in a restaurant. He is a ..... . الغربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) teacher b) doctor c) farmer d) chef
5. The ..... works in a restaurant. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) waiter b) water c) nurse d) customer
6. We went to a nice ..... to have our lunch out.
   a) classroom b) playground c) library d) restaurant
7. My father took us to a ..... for lunch.
   a) café b) farm c) field d) hall
8. We chose this café for lunch because it ..... very nice.
   a) saw b) looked c) made d) did
9. The tomato pizza has a good ..... .
   a) taste b) test c) toast d) tasty
10. I love looking ..... the window and watching the cars in the streets.
    a) out of b) out c) of d) with
11. Ashraf and I both had rice ..... lunch.
    a) at b) for c) on d) with
12. We ..... the food we want to eat in the restaurant from the menu.
    a) boil b) cook c) add d) choose
13. I'd like to eat a cheese and tomato ..... .
    a) pizza b) juice c) soup d) bread

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Ordering food in a café

طلب طعام بالمقهى

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response جملة الرد
online	
What would you like?	ماذا تريد؟
I'd like pizza.	أريد بيتزا.
Have you got any salad?	هل لديكم سلطة؟
Yes, we have. Small or large?	نعم لدينا. أتريد طبقاً كبيراً أم صغيراً؟
Large, please.	طبقًا كبيراً من فضلك.
Is that everything?	هل هذا كل ما تريد؟
Yes, thank you.	نعم، شكراً لك.
Anything else?	هل تريد شيئًا آخر؟
No, thanks.	لا، شكراً.
That's 100 pounds.	الحساب مائة جنيه.
Thank you, here you are.	شكراً، تفضل.

PRACTICE

Speaking Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

دمياط ٢٠٢٣

Complete the following dialogue:

Amgad is ordering food in a restaurant.

Waiter : Hello, how can I help you?

Amgad : Hello, (1)..... .

Waiter : Here's the menu.

Amgad : (2)..... .

Waiter : With or without rice?

Amgad : (3)..... .

Waiter : Anything else?

Amgad : No ,thank you, . (4).....?

Waiter : That's 80 pounds ,please.

Amgad : (5)..... .

Time to Practise

Complete the following dialogue:

A customer is at a restaurant to have his lunch.

Assistant : What would you like?

Customer : (1)..... .

Assistant : And would you like any drinks?

Customer : (2).....?

Assistant : Yes, we've got tea and coffee.

Customer : (3)..... .

Assistant : Coffee! OK.

Customer : (4).....?

Assistant : That's 110 pounds, please.

Customer : (5)..... .

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A customer wants to eat a chicken pizza.

Waiter : How can I help you?
Customer : (1) ..... ?
Waiter : Yes, we've got a chicken pizza. Would you like a small or large one?
Customer : (2) ..... .
Waiter : Would you like a drink?
Customer : Yes, please. (3) ..... .
Waiter : OK.
Customer : (4) ..... ?
Waiter : That's 150 pounds.
Customer : (5) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The waiter asked me what food I'd like to ..... .
   a) say b) tell c) bring d) order
2. Mum likes eating salad. It is ..... .
   a) healthy b) unhealthy c) bad d) weak
3. We catch fish from the ..... .
   a) lake b) mountain c) forest d) cave
4. When we sat on the table, a waiter offered us the ..... .
   a) diagram b) poster c) list d) menu
5. I like pizza. It's a delicious ..... .
   a) mail b) male c) meal d) mile
6. Tagine is a ..... with meat, vegetables fruit and spices.
   a) straw b) stew c) rice d) sugar
7. We went to the ..... yesterday to have our dinner. It was great.
   a) café b) coffee c) cinema d) park
8. We should ..... lots of fish. It doesn't have a lot of fat in it.
   a) had b) having c) has d) have

9. Lama feels tired. She ..... have a rest.

a) needs
b) should
c) has
d) does

10. What kinds of food should we .....?

a) eating
b) eat
c) ate
d) eaten

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Students shouldn't making noise in the library. (.....)
2. The doctor told him that he shouldn't eat less. He's too fat. (.....)
3. You shouldn't help your little brother. (.....)
4. **A:** I'm very ill. **B:** You should go to school today. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A review of a restaurant you visited"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Read this review if you want to ..... sure that this café is amazing.

a) have
b) take
c) do
d) make

2. My father is very ill. He ..... have unhealthy food.

a) shouldn't
b) should
c) can
d) must

Review on Unit 6

Vocabulary

amazing	مذهل
peppers	فلفل
bowl	سلطانية
raisins	زبيب
recipe	وصفة طعام
cinnamon	قرفة
rice pudding	أرز بودنج (حلو)
coconut	جوز الهند
salt	ملح
saucepan	قدر صغير
snack	وجبة خفيفة
fat	دهون
spices	توابل
stew	حساء/يخنة
fizzy drinks	مشروبات غازية
sweet taste	مذاق حلو
healthy	صحى
tagine	طاجن
hummus	حمص
teaspoon	ملعقة شاى
ingredients	مقادير/مكونات
olives	زيتون

Language

1 Some/ any: بعض/ أى

(some)

- There are some nuts.
- There is some cheese.

(any)

- Are there any chips?
- There isn't any cheese.

2 a lot of / enough / too many / too much: كثير من / كافٍ / كثير جدًا

a lot of / enough + اسم لا يُعد / اسم جمع

- My little brother eats a lot of sugar every day and that is too bad.
- There aren't enough chairs for everyone to sit on.

too many + اسم يُعد، جمع **/**

too much + اسم لا يُعد

- There are too many raisins.
- There's too much sugar.

3 Giving advice : إعطاء النصح

- We should drink a lot of water.
- You shouldn't eat too many crisps.

Skills

1 Ask and answer questions about food:

- What food do you like?
  - I like salad and meat.
- What food don't you like?
  - I don't like olives.
- Is there any cheese?
  - Yes, there is.
- Are there any biscuits?
  - No, there aren't.

2 Ordering food in a café:

- What would you like?
  - I'd like pizza.
- Have you got any salad?
  - Yes, we have. Small or large?
- Is that everything?
  - Yes, thank you.
- Anything else?
  - No, thanks.
- That's 100 pounds.
  - Thank you, here you are.

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 6

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What did you have in the café?
   a) Fish. b) Basbousa. c) Koshari. d) Kunafa.
2. What did your cousins have?
   a) Fish. b) Basbousa. c) Koshari. d) Kunafa.
3. How was the food?
   a) Hot. b) Spicy. c) Salty. d) Delicious.
4. Who liked the food?
   a) You. b) Your family. c) Your cousins. d) All of us.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sama is asking Nada about her favourite dish.

Sama : Hi, Nada!
Nada : Hi, Sama!
Sama : (1).....?
Nada : Molokhia. What about you?
Sama : I love Koshari.
Nada : (3).....?
Sama : Yes, of course. Rice, pasta, hummus and lentils.
Nada : Good. (4)..... .
Sama : Will you try it?
Nada : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Africa has a lot of interesting kinds of food. Egypt, for example is famous for "koshari". It is a delicious meal with rice, pasta, tomato sauce and fried onions. It's very popular; many people like it. In Morocco, there is a traditional meal called

"tagine", it's a stew with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices. The taste is amazing, the name of tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food. In Zimbabwe, people often eat "kapenta". It's a type of fish which people dry in the sun. They often cook it with tomatoes and onions. It's great. In Kenya, people like "nyama na irio"; it's a stew with meat and potatoes. People there often make it for dinner. Tell me, which food you would like to try. For me, I like most traditional Egyptian food: koshari, falafel and kebab. All have special flavours.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

.....

3. Why do you think people in Egypt like koshari?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "type" means ..... .
   a) piece b) snack c) kind d) slice
5. People of Kenya often have meat stew for ..... .
   a) breakfast b) dinner c) lunch d) break
6. The writer likes koshari which has got rice, pasta and ..... sauce.
   a) potato b) meat c) vegetable d) tomato

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Roz Bel laban is the name for the Egyptian rice ..... . ٢٠٢٠ الجيزة
   a) falafel b) pudding c) ful medames d) koshari
2. Which of these can you boil water in? قنا ٢٠٢٢
   a) Ball. b) Cup. c) Glass. d) Saucepan.
3. Most children love food that has sweet ..... .
   a) kind b) type c) taste d) test
4. Waiter: That's 150 pounds. .....: Here you are.
   a) Helper b) Customer c) Seller d) Worker

5. We should ..... our teeth before we sleep.
a) give b) catch c) add d) clean

6. We bought a lot of vegetables and made a nice ..... .
a) chips b) salad c) kunafa d) rice pudding

7. I'd like to have fish and rice ..... lunch today.
a) in b) of c) for d) on

8. There ..... some water in the bottle. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
a) isn't b) is c) aren't d) are

9. Yara likes to eat ..... meat for dinner.
a) any b) some c) a d) an

10. She's always tired. She ..... not go to bed late every night.
a) hasn't b) shouldn't c) should d) must

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She has any apple. (.....) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
2. Is there any mobile phones? (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
3. He can't sleep as he has too many coffee. (.....) القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
4. We should has a lot of water a day. (.....)

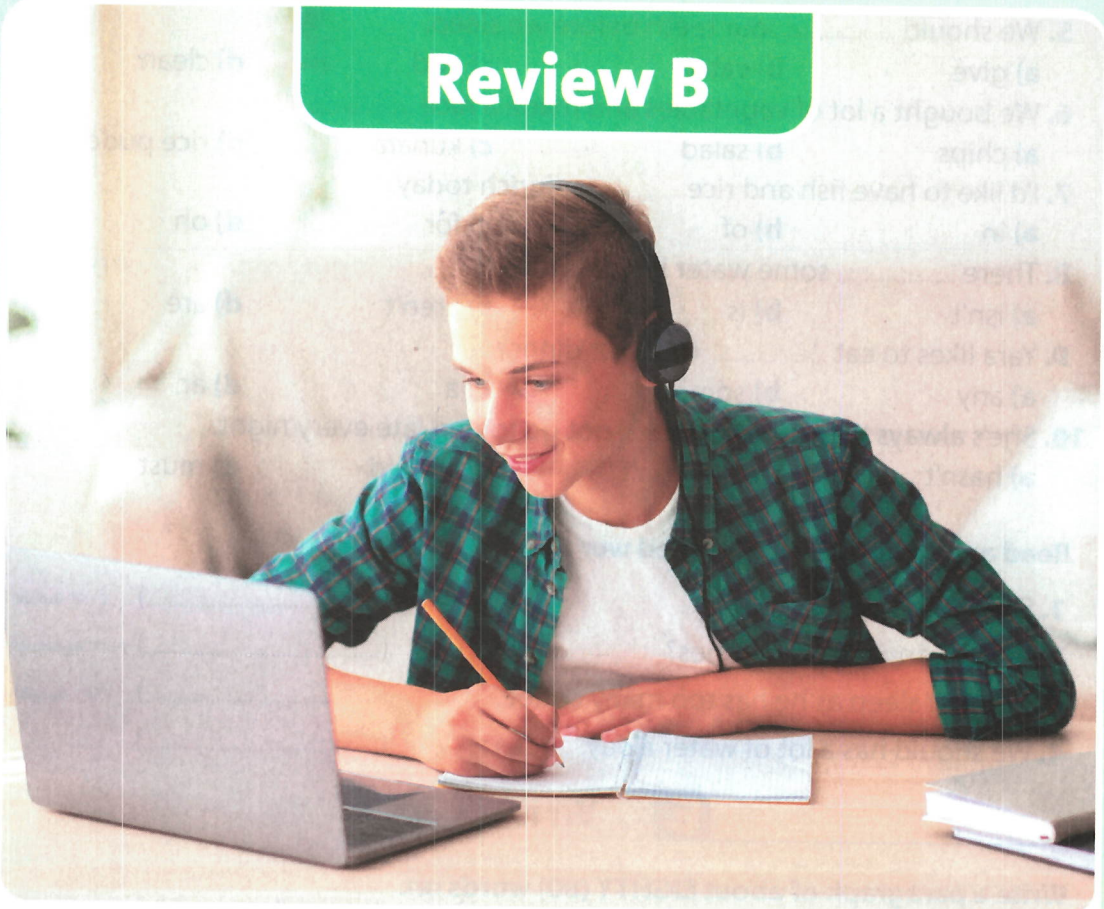
E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A healthy meal you had" WB

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Review B



Units 4, 5 & 6

Review B

SB pages 64 & 65 | WB pages 116 & 117

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- What do you do at Sham El-Nessim?

Match paragraphs 1–4 with the headings a–d.

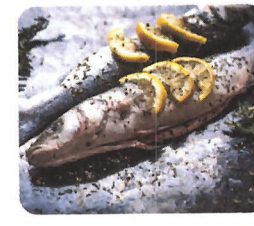
Sham El-Nessim

1. What and when is it?

Sham El-Nessim is my favourite time of the year.

We enjoy it at the start of spring. Sham El-Nessim started in 2700 BCE!

فسيخ (1)



2. What people do

Today, most Egyptians have a picnic in a park or next to the river with their families. Many people also go to the beach, where they make sandcastles and swim in the sea.

3. A recipe

On this day, we eat a lot of special food. Do you want to know how to enjoy feseekh[1]?

Add lemon juice to the fish and have it with salad. It's delicious, but you should buy it from a good shop and you shouldn't eat too much!

4. What I did

Last year at Sham El-Nessim, we went to Alexandria. We visited our family and went to the beach. We rode our bikes and played games. Do you know what we are doing in this photo? We are painting eggs! We always do this. We didn't see our cousins last year, but we made a video call. It was fun to talk to them on the laptop.

Do you know any other special food? Click on the icon at the top of this website. Take a photo and write an email about it. Send us a recipe for it.

Post-reading questions:

1. How do you eat feseekh?
2. What did you do at Sham El-Nessim last year?

Pre-listening question:

- How do you make pancakes?

Lesson 2

Listen and number the pictures in the correct order. *SB page 65*

Speaker: In the UK[1], many people eat pancakes[2] at the start of spring. How do you make pancakes?

Put all your ingredients in a bowl and add two eggs. Stir everything together. Put some butter in pan. When the butter is hot, you should start cooking your pancakes!

Cook each pancake for 2 to 3 minutes on one side. Then cook the other side of the pancake.

Eat your pancakes with honey[3] and nuts or with sugar and lemon juice.

Hmm, they are delicious.

(1) المملكة المتحدة

(2) الكعك المحلى

(3) عسل النحل

Post-listening question:

- What do you think of pancakes?

Read the email and complete Judy's shopping list. *WB page 116*

Hi Judy,

The family party is on Saturday. There are ten people.

Can you help me and buy the shopping?

Five people like fish. Five people like chicken. The children like fizzy drinks, but they aren't healthy. So, we can have orange juice. Four bottles are enough for the children. We can all drink water, so we need eight bottles. Buy some tea, too, please.

Please go to the shops and then check we have enough chairs.

Many thanks

Mona

Scan & Listen

End of Term Practice

WB pages 118 & 119

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Shorouk goes to school ..... .
   a) alone
   b) with Lubna only
   c) with her mother
   d) with Lubna and Alaa
2. Shorouk is in the ..... stage.
   a) nursery
   b) preparatory
   c) secondary
   d) university
3. Shorouk's parents work in ..... .
   a) the same place
   b) different places
   c) the same school
   d) a factory
4. ..... work in a hospital.
   a) Alaa's parents
   b) Lubna's parents
   c) Shorouk's parents
   d) No parents

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nesma and Reem go to the school library.

Reem : Good morning, Nesma, when will we start doing our research?

Nesma : During the break.

Reem : Great. Where (1).....?

Nesma : In the school library.

Reem : Are (2).....?

Nesma : Of course, I'm ready.

Reem : Is it easy to find the books we need?

Nesma : (3)..... .

Reem : Who will help us there?

Nesma : (4)..... .

Reem : I hope (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Mona. I want to be a doctor here in Cairo so I always work hard at school. My favourite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak good English to other children in different places. My teacher is very good, but I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was fantastic! I cycled to summer school every day, and I met students from different countries. I now have a friend from Uganda! My favourite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in it!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What are Mona's favourite subjects?

.....

2. Why does she want to speak English?

.....

3. Is Mona right to use technology? Why?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "it" refers to ..... .
   a) Cairo
   b) technology
   c) a river
   d) summer school
5. Where is Mona now?
   a) In Egypt.
   b) In England.
   c) In Uganda.
   d) In Cambridge.
6. What does Mona use to practise her English?
   a) Her tablet.
   b) Her phone.
   c) Her laptop.
   d) a and b.
7. Mona is talking about her ..... .
   a) pets and hobbies
   b) life and friends
   c) boss at work
   d) travels to Uganda

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are too ..... people on this beach. Let's go to a different one.
   a) many b) much
   c) enough d) few
2. My uncle is very ..... . He chooses things wisely.
   a) strong b) tall
   c) fast d) sensible
3. I love sports. ..... is my favourite school subject.
   a) PE b) Maths
   c) Computer studies d) Art
4. The Egyptian football team arrived ..... Uganda two days ago.
   a) in b) at
   c) for d) from
5. On a ..... weekend, Omar reads books at the club library.
   a) tropical b) physical
   c) spicy d) typical
6. Ahmed likes history because he loves ..... about the past.
   a) learns b) to learning
   c) learning d) learnt
7. My father and mother are my ..... .
   a) grandchildren b) parents
   c) cousins d) daughters
8. The tourists are ..... a selfie next to the River Nile.
   a) touching b) drawing
   c) relaxing d) taking

9. Tom is writing about his weekend in his online ..... .

a) 3D printer
b) diary
c) mouse
d) laptop

10. Why don't we ..... swimming next week?

a) go
b) do
c) make
d) see

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What do you have for breakfast yesterday? (.....)
2. There are too much salt in this recipe. (.....)
3. Amr shouldn't drink too many fruit juice. (.....)
4. Gymnastics are my favourite sport. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write an email of 80 words about a typical day in your life.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Listening Texts

Unit 1 Test yourself 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My family lives in Cairo, but my dad works in Paris. He works very hard. My mother is a teacher. My two brothers and I go to the same school.

Unit 1 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Heidi is an orphan girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in a small house. Heidi sleeps in the attic of the house. She drinks goat's milk.

Unit 2 Test yourself 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My father works with computers. My mother is a teacher. My dad never works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework! We often go shopping.

Unit 2 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In the USA, there is a lot of snow in winter. The children travel to school on a snowmobile. It's cold, but it's fast- and fun!

Unit 3 Test yourself 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My best friend is Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind. He likes reading and playing video games. His favourite subject is English.

Unit 3 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My favourite book is called "*Gulliver's Travels*", by Jonathan Swift. It is about a clever doctor. He works on a boat but there is a big storm.

Unit 4 Test yourself 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I love technology! My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop, but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone.

Unit 4 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Rana is my best friend. Her favourite subject is computer studies. She likes technology. She spends a lot of time on her laptop playing video games.

Unit 5 Test yourself 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last winter, Ragab travelled to Aswan. He travelled with his family. They took a train. It was a fantastic journey. He bought many souvenirs from the shops there.

Unit 5 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I went to Jordan by plane last holiday. It was great. We stayed in a holiday flat by the beach. We swam every day. We visited a lot of famous places.

Unit 6 Test yourself 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last week, I went with my mum, dad and my little sister to a cafe near the river. I had chicken with rice, but my parents had rice with fish. My dad chose this place because it looked nice.

Unit 6 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I had my favourite meal, koshari in a café for lunch. My family and cousins all had fish from the sea! We all liked our food. It was delicious.

End of Term Practice

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Shorouk is 12 years old. She is in preparatory one. She goes to school with her friends Lubna and Alaa. Shooruk's parents are doctors at a hospital.

Challenging Questions Answers

Unit 1

Lessons 1 & 2

1. a) same
2. d) have
3. c) We

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Are
2. good at
3. doesn't have
4. is

Lessons 5 & 6

1. d) have
2. c) find
3. b) on

Unit 2

Lessons 1 & 2

1. d) after
2. a) never does
3. c) Sometimes

Lessons 3 & 4

1. today's
2. chemist's
3. They

Lessons 5 & 6

1. a) when
2. a) quite
3. d) have

Unit 3

Lessons 1 & 2

1. c) description
2. d) is able
3. a) have

Lessons 3 & 4

1. c) interesting
2. c) adjectives
3. a) shout

Lessons 5 & 6

1. d) by
2. b) called
3. c) fun

Unit 4

Lessons 1 & 2

1. a) design
2. d) laptop computers
3. c) a

Lessons 3 & 4

1. b) have
2. d) is using
3. c) are always

Lessons 5 & 6

1. c) answer
2. a) when
3. b) don't

Unit 5

Lessons 1 & 2

1. b) echo
2. a) call out
3. c) called

Lessons 3 & 4

1. c) get to
2. a) in
3. b) didn't go

Lessons 5 & 6

1. c) snails
2. a) for example
3. d) were you

Unit 6

Lessons 1 & 2

1. d) equipment
2. a) cinnamon
3. c) a

Lessons 3 & 4

1. c) a
2. a) every day
3. a) should

Lessons 5 & 6

1. d) make
2. a) shouldn't